Dear Fellow Shareholders,

Since I joined Sonic Foundry six years ago, I’ve worked with the management team to identify key areas of growth. We’ve been able to expand to new geographies and have grown from a U.S.-based company to a truly global enterprise, with functioning sales representation in Japan, Europe, the Middle East, India and China.

We’ve evolved the product mix far beyond the room-based video capture solutions for which we are most widely known and respected. Our offerings now include an array of video content capture solutions to serve content creators in every environment, from the most technically advanced meeting and learning spaces, to technology-light spaces, to a simple laptop on a dining room table.

This new product mix means that recurring services revenue, which includes Mediasite Video Cloud subscriptions, support renewals, annual software licenses and events services, is growing at a faster rate than that of our total revenue.

These actions have been intended to provide new sources of long term revenue growth. However, the rate of growth has been slower than what all of us would like to see.

We also continue to pursue large transactions for our traditional products to provide an additional source of revenue growth. The timing of these transactions has always been difficult to predict and gives rise to “lumpy” growth. The most obvious illustration of this is that we enjoyed approximately $4 million of billings from these large transactions in 2015 but realized $0 in billings for 2016.

However, in 2016 we saw improved business fundamentals. Billings in our core business—excluding large transactions—grew by 12%, we realized measurable improvement in gross margins and a swing from an adjusted EBITDA loss the prior year to profit.

We are also proud of the significant progress we made on several of our core business objectives, including:

**STEADY GAINS IN INTERNATIONAL EXECUTION**

**Sonic Foundry International (formerly MediaMission)**

We developed significant partnerships with key players in the healthcare industry, such as Noordhoff Health in the Netherlands, a business unit of Noordhoff Publishers, to co-create innovative learning solutions with more than 4,000 hospitals. This initiative will be used as a model to develop further partnership initiatives in Europe and the United States.

**Mediasite K.K. in Japan**

Strong performance in Japan was driven in part by corporate training initiatives in highly-regulated industries such as pharmaceuticals and health. We’ve also established strategic reseller partnerships with companies such as Sony, IMS Health, Toshiba, Hitachi Cable Network and NTT which are producing strong results.

**China**

Overall billings to China grew nearly threefold, and we have collected $1.3 million to date from our partnership with PushiTech, a spin-off of Neusoft. We are seeing increased distribution activity and growth in licensing of software products as they leverage their established relationships with customers, and the state and federal government to sell the value of scalable video applications.
EXTENDING THE VALUE OF VIDEO IN THE ENTERPRISE

Key Technology Partnerships
We enhanced our corporate delivery capabilities with technology integration partnerships with Ramp Holdings and Riverbed. The partnerships help to scale delivery of behind-the-firewall enterprise streaming video applications such as corporate communications, training and live webcasts to Sonic Foundry’s 2300+ corporate and government customers.

Mediasite Events
Mediasite Events turnkey service engagements benefited from the expansion of new and repeat global conferences, such as VMWare, Ellucian, Citrix, Gartner and Autodesk.

Mediasite Video Cloud Growth
Improved operational efficiencies coupled with increased customer demand has led to significant growth in our cloud service, which we expect to continue in 2017 and beyond. The viewership growth by our customers using Mediasite Video Cloud is validation that we have the right services offering.

LOOKING AHEAD
The rapidly changing video landscape creates a new opportunity for Sonic Foundry in 2017.

For more than a decade we’ve been first to plant the video flag in emerging market segments, in particular higher education. We have done this by selling our video capture and creation tools directly to customers who use those tools to create content in their organizations.

Now, as demand for the benefits of video extends beyond our traditional end-user markets, we have the opportunity to partner with businesses seeking to help their customers adopt video strategies. We enable these video strategies by embedding our technology within our partner’s value proposition. The management team, our board of directors and I are committed to expanding our business in this area. This year we will create and prioritize new strategic partnership opportunities, and deploy our best team resources to pursue them.

We plan to replicate the early success we’ve seen in the publishing space with our Noordhoff Health partnership. We are confident that similar requirements for video will enable us to extend the traditional benefits of Mediasite to net-new growth partners.

We’ve identified global partners with established footprints that require scalable video solutions with management and security, and with flexibility in creation, workflow and consumption of video. We have had productive meetings with multinational networking and telecommunications companies, manufacturers of adjacent technologies and global information services companies. In all of these opportunities, our partners will sell their solution to their customers and license our technology to enable video in their solution.

In addition to this new initiative we will focus on continued growth in our core business. We will assist the PushiTech sales and marketing team in China as it continues gaining inroads into the broad Chinese market. We will continue our work to deepen existing channel partnerships which will help us to maintain our competitive advantage in winning the largest deals in academic video. Finally, I am confident that we can continue to grow our core business in North America, Europe, and Japan at 5-7%.

We will help transform the vast libraries of video into interactive, indexed rich video though automated metadata creation and advanced search capabilities, and positively impact the individuals who are learning from it. Maximizing shareholder value is the core of every decision we make and every action we take. Our mission to drive shareholder value will be realized by enabling more effective communications by leveraging the power of video to bridge both time and distance.

Sincerely,
Gary Weis, CEO of Sonic Foundry
NOTICE OF ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS
To Be Held March 7, 2017

The Annual Meeting of Stockholders of SONIC FOUNDRY, INC., a Maryland corporation (“Sonic”) will be held at the Monona Terrace Community and Convention Center, One John Nolen Drive, Madison, Wisconsin 53703 on March 7, 2017 at 9:00 a.m. local time, for the following purposes:

1. To elect one director to hold office for a term of five years, and until his successor is duly elected and qualified.

2. To approve, by a non-binding advisory vote, of the compensation paid by the Company to its Named Executive Officers;

3. To select, by a non-binding advisory vote, the frequency at which the stockholders of the Company will be asked to approve, by a non-binding advisory vote, the compensation paid by the Company to its Named Executive Officers;

4. To vote on a Proposal to amend the 2008 Sonic Foundry Employee Stock Purchase Plan to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan from 150,000 to 200,000.

5. To vote on a Proposal to amend the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan from 1,800,000 to 2,700,000.

6. To vote on a Proposal to amend the 2008 Sonic Foundry Non-Employee Directors Stock Option Plan to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan from 100,000 to 150,000.

7. To ratify the appointment of Baker Tilly Virchow Krause LLP as our independent auditors for the fiscal year ending September 30, 2017.

8. To transact such other business as may properly come before the meeting or any adjournments thereof.

All the above matters are more fully described in the accompanying Proxy Statement.

Only holders of record of Common Stock at the close of business on January 10, 2017 are entitled to notice of, and to vote at, this meeting or any adjournment or adjournments thereof.

Please complete and return the enclosed proxy in the envelope provided or follow the instructions on the proxy card to authorize a proxy by telephone or over the Internet, whether or not you intend to be present at the meeting in person.

By Order of the Board of Directors.

Madison, Wisconsin
January 26, 2017

Kenneth A. Minor
Secretary

If you cannot personally attend the meeting, it is earnestly requested that you promptly indicate your vote on the issues included on the enclosed proxy and date, sign and mail it in the enclosed self-addressed envelope, which requires no postage if mailed in the United States or, follow the instructions on the proxy card to authorize a proxy by telephone or over the Internet. Doing so will save us the expense of further mailings. If you sign and return your proxy card without marking choices, your shares will be voted in accordance with the recommendations of the Board of Directors.
The Board of Directors of Sonic Foundry, Inc., a Maryland corporation ("Sonic"), hereby solicits the enclosed proxy. Unless instructed to the contrary on the proxy, it is the intention of the persons named in the proxy to vote the proxies:

FOR the election of Brian T. Wiegand for a term expiring in 2022;

FOR approval, by a non-binding advisory vote, of the compensation paid by the Company to its Named Executive Officers;

FOR the selection, by a non-binding advisory vote, of the frequency at which the stockholders of the Company will be asked to approve, by a non-binding advisory vote, the compensation paid by the Company to its Named Executive Officers;

FOR approval of a proposal to amend the 2008 Sonic Foundry Employee Stock Purchase Plan to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan from 150,000 to 200,000.

FOR approval of a proposal to amend the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan from 1,800,000 to 2,700,000.

FOR a Proposal to amend the 2008 Sonic Foundry Non-Employee Directors Stock Option Plan to increase the number of common shares subject to the plan from 100,000 to 150,000; and

FOR the ratification of the appointment of Baker Tilly Virchow Krause LLP as independent auditors of Sonic for the fiscal year ending September 30, 2017.

In the event that the nominee for director becomes unavailable to serve, which management does not expect, the persons named in the proxy reserve full discretion to vote for any other persons who may be nominated. Proxies may also be authorized by telephone or over the Internet by following the instructions on the proxy card. Any stockholder giving a proxy may revoke it at any time prior to the voting of such proxy. This Proxy Statement and the accompanying proxy are being mailed on or about February 1, 2017.

Each stockholder will be entitled to one vote for each share of Common Stock standing in his or her name on our books at the close of business on January 10, 2017 (the “Record Date”). Only holders of issued and outstanding shares of Sonic's common stock as of the close of business on the Record Date are entitled to notice of and to vote at the Annual Meeting, including any adjournment or postponement thereof. On that date, we had outstanding and entitled to vote 4,416,423 shares of Common Stock, held by approximately 4,000 stockholders, of which approximately 200 were held in street name.

QUORUM; VOTES REQUIRED

Votes cast by proxy or in person at the Annual Meeting will be tabulated by the inspector of elections appointed for the Annual Meeting and will determine whether or not a quorum is present. Where, as to any matter submitted to the stockholders for a vote, proxies are marked as abstentions (or stockholders appear in person but abstain from voting), such abstentions will be treated as shares that are present and entitled to vote for purposes of determining the presence of a quorum, but will not be treated as present and entitled to vote for any other purpose. If a broker indicates on the proxy that it does not have discretionary authority as to certain shares to vote on a particular matter and has not received instructions from the beneficial owner, which is known as a broker non-vote, such shares will also be considered present for purposes of a quorum, provided that the broker exercises discretionary authority on any other matter in the Proxy. A majority of the shares of Common Stock issued, outstanding and entitled to vote at the Annual
Meeting, present in person or represented by proxy, shall constitute a quorum at the Annual Meeting. The election of
the Director requires a plurality of the votes present and entitled to vote. Therefore, the director who receives the
highest vote total will be elected. Neither an abstention nor a withheld vote will affect the outcome of the election.
The vote to amend the 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan, the amendment of the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan and, the
amendment of the Sonic Foundry Non-Employee Directors Stock Option Plan require the affirmative vote of the
holders of a majority of shares entitled to vote at the Annual Meeting. A plurality of the votes cast at the Annual
Meeting is required to select, by a non-binding advisory vote, the frequency at which the stockholders of the Company
will be asked to approve, by a non-binding advisory vote, the compensation paid by the Company to its Named
Executive Officers. If you abstain from voting on either of these proposals, it will have the same effect as a vote
against the proposal. The non-binding advisory vote of the compensation paid by the Company to its Named Executive
Officers and ratification of the appointment of Baker Tilly Virchow Krause LLP requires the affirmative vote of the
holders of a majority of the votes cast at the Annual Meeting. If you abstain or withhold your vote on this proposal,
it will have no effect on the outcome of the proposal.

The New York Stock Exchange ("NYSE") has rules that govern brokers who have record ownership of listed company
stock held in brokerage accounts for their clients who beneficially own the shares. Under these rules, brokers who do
not receive voting instructions from their clients have the discretion to vote uninstructed shares on certain discretionary
matters but do not have discretion to vote uninstructed shares as to certain other non-discretionary matters. A broker
may return a proxy card on behalf of a beneficial owner from whom the broker has not received instructions that casts
a vote with regard to discretionary matters but expressly states that the broker is not voting as to non-discretionary
matters. The broker's inability to vote with respect to the non-discretionary matters with respect to which the broker
has not received instructions from the beneficial owner is referred to as a "broker non-vote". Under current NYSE
interpretations, the proposal to ratify the appointment of Baker Tilly Virchow Krause, LLP as our independent auditor
is considered a discretionary matter, while the non-binding advisory vote of the compensation paid by the Company
to its named executive officers and ratification of the appointment of Baker Tilly Virchow Krause, LLP requires the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the votes cast at the Annual Meeting. If you abstain or withhold your vote on this proposal, it will have no effect on the outcome of the proposal.

DATE, TIME AND PLACE OF ANNUAL MEETING

The Annual Meeting will be held on March 7, 2017 at 9:00 a.m. (Central time) at the Monona Terrace Community
and Convention Center, One John Nolen Drive, Madison, Wisconsin 53703.

PROPOSAL ONE: ELECTION OF DIRECTOR

Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation and Bylaws provide that the Board of Directors shall be divided
into five classes, with each class having a five-year term. Directors are assigned to each class in accordance with a
resolution or resolutions adopted by the Board of Directors. Vacancies on the Board of Directors resulting from death,
resignation, disqualification, removal or other causes may be filled by either the affirmative vote of the holders of a
majority of the then-outstanding shares or by the affirmative vote of a majority of the remaining directors then in office,
even if less than a quorum of the Board of Directors. Newly created directorships resulting from any increase in the
number of directors may, unless the Board of Directors determines otherwise, be filled only by a majority vote of the
entire Board of Directors. A director elected by the Board of Directors to fill a vacancy (including a vacancy created by
an increase in the number of directors) shall serve until the next annual meeting of stockholders or until such director’s
successor is elected and qualified.

Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation provide that the number of directors, which shall constitute the
whole Board of Directors, shall be not be less than three or more than twelve. The currently authorized number of
directors is five. The seat on the Board of Directors currently held by Brian T. Wiegand, is designated as a Class IV
Board seat, with term expiring at the Annual Meeting. The Board of Directors has nominated Brian T. Wiegand as Class
IV Director for election at the Annual Meeting.
If elected at the Annual Meeting, Mr. Wiegand would serve until the 2022 Annual Meeting and until his successor is elected and qualified or until his earlier death, resignation or removal.

The election of Mr. Wiegand requires a plurality of the votes present and entitled to vote.

Nominee for Director for a Five-Year term expiring on the 2022 Annual Meeting

Brian T. Wiegand

Mr. Wiegand, age 48, has been a director of the Company since July 2012, and is a serial entrepreneur who successfully founded and sold several internet-based companies. He is currently the founder and CEO of Gavy, Inc., a live video shopping platform that is expected to launch in 2017. Mr. Wiegand founded and served as CEO of Hopster, a company that links digital marketing efforts with real-world shopping behavior by rewarding consumer purchase loyalty, engagement and advocacy. Hopster announced in October 2014 that it was acquired by Inmar, Incorporated, where Mr. Wiegand served as SVP of Growth and Strategy from the date of purchase to August 2016. Mr. Wiegand co-founded and served as executive chair of the board of Alice.com, an online retail platform that connects manufacturers and consumers in the consumer packaged goods market. Alice.com filed for receivership in August 2013. Mr. Wiegand also co-founded Jellyfish.com, a shopping search engine, in June of 2006. He served as CEO until October 2007 when the company was sold to Microsoft. Mr. Wiegand continued with Microsoft as the General Manager of Social Commerce until May 2008. He also co-founded NameProtect, a trademark research and digital brand protection services company in August 1997 which was sold to Corporation Services Company in March 2007. In addition, Mr. Wiegand founded BizFilings in 1996, the Internet’s leading incorporation Services Company. He served as the president and CEO until 2002 when the company was acquired by Wolters Kluwer. Mr. Wiegand attended the University of Wisconsin – Madison.

The members of the Board of Directors unanimously recommend a vote FOR the election of Mr. Wiegand as Class IV Director.

DIRECTORS CONTINUING IN OFFICE

Gary R. Weis Term Expires in 2018
(Class V Director)

Mr. Weis, age 69, has been Chief Executive Officer since March 2011, Chief Technology Officer since September 2011 and a Director of Sonic since February 2004. Prior to joining Sonic, he served as President, Chief Executive Officer and a Director of Cometa Networks, a wireless broadband Internet access company from March 2003 to April 2004. From May 1999 to February 2003 he was Senior Vice President of Global Services at AT&T where he was responsible for one of the world's largest data and IP networks, serving more than 30,000 businesses and providing Internet access to more than one million individuals worldwide. While at AT&T, Mr. Weis also was CEO of Concert, a joint venture between AT&T and British Telecom. Previously, from January 1995 to May 1999 he was General Manager of IBM Global Services, Network Services. Mr. Weis served as a Director from March 2001 to February 2003 of AT&T Latin America, a facilities-based provider of telecom services in Brazil, Argentina, Chile, Peru and Columbia. Mr. Weis earned BS and MS degrees in Applied Mathematics and Computer Science at the University of Illinois, Chicago.

David C. Kleinman Term Expires in 2019
(Class I Director)

Mr. Kleinman, age 81, has been a Director of Sonic since December 1997 and has taught at the Chicago Booth School of Business at the University of Chicago from 1971 to 2014, where he was Adjunct Professor of Strategic Management. Mr. Kleinman was a Director (trustee) of the Columbia Acorn Trust, and its predecessors from 1972 to December 2010 (where he was a member of the Committee on Investment Performance and past chair, a member and past chair of the Audit Committee and a member of the Compliance Committee); a Director (trustee) of the Wanger Advisors Trust from
2005 to December 2010; a Director and non-executive chair of the Board from 1984 to 2014 and Chair Emeritus since 2014 of North Lime Holdings and its wholly owned subsidiary, Irex Corporation, a contractor and distributor of insulation materials; and a Director from 1993 to 2015 of Plymouth Tube Company, a manufacturer of metal tubing and metal extrusions (where he served on the Audit Committee). From 1999 to 2006, he was a member of the Advisory Board of DSC Logistics, a logistics management and warehousing firm. From May 1997 to February 2004, Mr. Kleinman served as a Director of AT&T Latin America and predecessor companies, a facilities-based provider of telecom services in Brazil, Argentina, Chile, Peru and Columbia (where he was chair of the Audit Committee and a member of the Compensation Committee). From 1994 to 2005, he was a director of Wisconsin Paper and Products Company, a jobber of paper and paper products. From 1964 to 1971, Mr. Kleinman was a member of the finance staff of the Ford Motor Company. Mr. Kleinman received a BS degree in Mathematical Statistics and a PHD in Business from the University of Chicago.

Mark D. Burish Term Expires in 2020 (Class II Director)

Mr. Burish, age 63, has been a director since March 2010 and has served as Non-Executive Chair since April 2011. Mr. Burish is a shareholder of the law firm of Hurley, Burish & Stanton, Madison, WI, which he helped start in 1983. He is the founder and CEO of Our House Senior Living, LLC, Milestone Senior Living, LLC and Milestone Management Services, LLC which he started in 1997. Mr. Burish received his BA degree in communications from Marquette University in 1975 and his JD degree from the University of Wisconsin in 1978.

Frederick H. Kopko, Jr. Term Expires in 2021 (Class III Director)

Frederick H. Kopko, age 61, served as Sonic Foundry’s Secretary from April 1997 to February 2001 and has been a Director since December 1995. Mr. Kopko is a partner of the law firm of McBreen & Kopko, Chicago, Illinois, and has been a partner of that firm since January 1990. Mr. Kopko practices in the area of corporate law. He is the Managing Director, Neltjeberg Bay Enterprises LLC, a merchant banking and business consulting firm and has been a Director of Mercury Air Group, Inc. since 1992. Mr. Kopko received a B.A. degree in Economics from the University of Connecticut, a J.D. degree from the University of Notre Dame Law School and an M.B.A. degree from the University of Chicago.

When considering whether the Board of Directors and nominees thereto have the experience, qualifications, attributes and skills, taken as a whole, to enable the Board of Directors to satisfy its oversight responsibilities effectively in light of our business and structure, the Board of Directors focused primarily on the information discussed in each of the Board members' biographical information set forth above. Each of the Company's directors possess high ethical standards, act with integrity and exercise careful, mature judgment. Each is committed to employing his skills and abilities to aid the long-term interests of the stakeholders of the Company. In addition, each of our directors has exhibited judgment and skill, and has either been actively involved with the Company for a considerable period of time or has experience with other organizations of comparable or greater size. In particular, Mr. Kopko has had extensive experience with companies comparable in size to Sonic Foundry, including serving as a director of Mercury Air Group, Inc. and fills a valuable need with experience in securities and other business law. Mr. Weis has had experience in both developing and established companies, having served as a CEO and Director of Cometa Networks and in several positions at AT&T and IBM, including Senior Vice President of Global Services. While at AT&T, Mr. Weis also was CEO of Concert, a joint venture between AT&T and British Telecom. Mr. Weis has served as CEO of the Company since March 2011. Mr. Kleinman has significant experience serving on boards of directors of various companies and has significant experience in finance and strategic management through his employment with the Chicago Booth School of Business at the University of Chicago where he also obtained valuable market insight to the Company’s largest customer base. Mr. Burish brings additional valuable legal experience to the Board as well as experience obtained through founding multiple companies. Mr. Wiegand has significant experience in founding and operating technology companies and building brand awareness with both businesses and consumers.
CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Director Independence

Through its listing requirements for companies with securities listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market, the NASDAQ Stock Market (“NASDAQ”) requires that a majority of the members of our Board be independent, as defined under NASDAQ’s rules. The NASDAQ rules have both objective tests and a subjective test for determining who is an “independent director.” The objective tests state, for example, that a director is not considered independent if he or she is an employee of the Company or has engaged in various types of business dealings with the Company. The subjective test states that an independent director must be a person who lacks a relationship that in the opinion of the Board would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director. The Board has made a subjective determination as to each independent director that no relationship exists that, in the opinion of the Board, would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director. In making these determinations, the Board reviews information provided by the directors in an annual questionnaire with regard to each director’s business and personal activities as they relate to the Company. Based on this review and consistent with NASDAQ’s independence criteria, the Board has affirmatively determined that Mark D. Burish, David C. Kleinman and Brian T. Wiegand are independent.

Related Person Transaction

The Board has adopted a Related Person Transaction Policy (the “Policy”), which is a written policy governing the review and approval or ratification of Related Person Transactions, as defined in SEC rules.

Under the Policy, each of our directors and executive officers must notify the Chairman of the Audit Committee in writing of any new potential Related Person Transaction involving such person or an immediate family member. The Audit Committee will review the relevant facts and circumstances and will approve or ratify the transaction only if it determines that the transaction is not inconsistent with, the best interests of the Company. The Related Party Transaction must then be approved by the independent directors. In determining whether to approve or ratify a Related Person Transaction, the Audit Committee and the independent directors may consider, among other things, the benefits to the Company; the impact on the director’s independence (if the Related Person is a director or an immediate family member); the availability of other sources for comparable products or services; the terms of the transaction; and the terms available to unrelated third parties or to employees generally. There were no new Related Person Transactions in the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016 (“Fiscal 2016”).

Board Leadership Structure and Role in Risk Oversight

Mark D. Burish serves as Non-Executive Chairman of the Board and Gary R. Weis serves as our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Technical Officer. The Company believes that having separate positions provides an appropriate leadership structure.

Our business and affairs are managed under the direction of our board, which is the Company’s ultimate decision-making body, except with respect to those matters reserved to our stockholders. Our Board’s key mission is to maximize long-term stockholder value. Our Board establishes our overall corporate policies, selects and evaluates our executive management team (which is charged with the conduct of our business), and acts as an advisor and counselor to executive management. Our board also oversees our business strategy and planning, as well as the performance of management in executing its business strategy and assessing and managing risks.

What is the Board’s role in risk oversight?

The board takes an active role in monitoring and assessing the Company’s risks, which include risks associated with operations, credit, financing and capital investments. Management is responsible for the Company’s day-to-day risk management activities and our board’s role is to engage in informed risk oversight. Management, through its
disclosure committee, compiles an annual ranking of risks to which the Company could be subjected and reviews the results of this risk assessment with the audit committee. Any significant risks are then reviewed by the board and assigned for oversight. In fulfilling this oversight role, our board focuses on understanding the nature of our enterprise risks, including our operations and strategic direction, as well as the adequacy of our risk management process and overall risk management system. There are a number of ways our board performs this function, including the following:

- at its regularly scheduled meetings, the board receives management updates on our business operations, financial results and strategy and discusses risks related to the business;
- the audit committee assists the board in its oversight of risk management by discussing with management, particularly, the Chief Financial Officer, our guidelines and policies regarding financial and enterprise risk management and risk appetite, including major risk exposures, and the steps management has taken to monitor and control such exposures; and
- through management updates and committee reports, the board monitors our risk management activities, including the annual risk assessment process, risks relating to our compensation programs, and financial and operational risks being managed by the Company.

The board of directors also has oversight responsibility for risks and exposures related to employee compensation programs and management succession planning, and assesses whether the organization’s compensation practices encourage risk taking that would have a material adverse effect on the Company. The compensation committee periodically reviews the structure and elements of our compensation programs and its policies and practices that manage or mitigate such risk, including the balance of short-term and long-term incentives, use of multiple performance measures, and a multi-year vesting schedule for long-term incentives. Based on these reviews, the committee believes our compensation programs do not encourage excessive risk taking.

**Board Structure and Meetings**

The Board met five times during Fiscal 2016. The Board also acted by written consent from time to time. All directors attended at least 75% of the total number of Board meetings and committee meetings on which they serve (during the period in which each director served). In addition, NASDAQ marketplace rules contemplate that the independent members of our Board will meet during the year in separate closed meetings referred to as “executive sessions” without any employee director or executive officer present. Executive sessions were usually held after regularly scheduled Board meetings during Fiscal 2016.

The Board of Directors has four standing committees, the Audit Committee, the Executive Compensation Committee, the Governance Committee and the Nominations Committee.

Sonic has a standing audit committee established in accordance with Section 3(a)(58)(A) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). Members of the Audit Committee are Messrs. Kleinman (chair), Burish and Wiegand. Sonic’s Board of Directors has determined that all members of Sonic’s Audit Committee are “independent” as that term is used in Item 7(d)(3)(iv) of Schedule 14A under the Exchange Act and as defined under Nasdaq listing standards. The Audit Committee provides assistance to the Board in fulfilling its oversight responsibility including: (i) internal and external financial reporting, (ii) risks and controls related to financial reporting, and (iii) the internal and external audit process. The Audit Committee is also responsible for recommending to the Board the selection of our independent public accountants and for reviewing all related party transactions. The Audit Committee met five times in Fiscal 2016. A copy of the charter of the Audit Committee is available on Sonic’s website.

Sonic's Board of Directors has determined that, due to his affiliation with the Chicago Booth School of Business at the University of Chicago, and due to his current and past service as a director on numerous company boards, and membership on numerous audit committees, including chair, along with his other academic and business credentials, Mr. Kleinman has the requisite experience and applicable background to meet Nasdaq standards requiring financial
The sophistication of at least one member of the audit committee. Sonic’s Board of Directors has also determined that neither Mr. Kleinman nor any other member of the Audit Committee is an audit committee financial expert as defined by applicable SEC regulations.

The Compensation Committee consists of Messrs. Kleinman (chair) and Burish. The Board of Directors has determined that all of the members of the Compensation Committee are “independent” as defined under Nasdaq listing standards. The Compensation Committee makes recommendations to the Board with respect to salaries of employees, the amount and allocation of any incentive bonuses among the employees, and the amount and terms of stock options to be granted to executive officers. The Compensation Committee met once in Fiscal 2016. A copy of the charter of the Compensation Committee is available on Sonic’s website.

The Governance Committee consists of Messrs. Burish (chair) and Kopko. The Governance Committee was established on January 24, 2013 to consider board terms and other governance issues related to enhancing shareholder value. The Committee did not meet in fiscal 2016.

The Nominations Committee consists of Messrs. Burish (chair), Kopko and Kleinman. The Board of Directors has determined that all of the members of the Nominations Committee are “independent” as defined under Nasdaq listing standards. The purpose of the Nominations Committee is to evaluate and recommend candidates for election as directors, make recommendations concerning the size and composition of the Board of Directors, develop specific criteria for director independence, and assess the effectiveness of the Board of Directors. Our Board of Directors has adopted a charter for the Nominations Committee, which is available on Sonic’s website. The Nominations Committee will review all candidates in the same manner regardless of the source of the recommendation. In recommending candidates for election to the Board of Directors, the Nominations Committee reviews each candidate’s qualifications, including whether a candidate possesses any of the specific qualities and skills desirable in certain members of the Board of Directors. Evaluations of candidates generally involve a review of background materials, internal discussions and interviews with selected candidates as appropriate. Generally, the Nominations Committee will consider various criteria in considering whether to make a recommendation. These criteria include expectations that directors have substantial accomplishments in their professional backgrounds and are able to make independent, analytical inquiries and exhibit practical wisdom and mature judgment. Director candidates should possess the highest personal and professional ethics, integrity and values, be committed to promoting the long-term interest of our stockholders and be able and willing to devote the necessary time to carrying out their duties and responsibilities as members of the Board. While the Board of Directors has not adopted a policy regarding diversity, we also believe our directors should come from diverse backgrounds and experience bases in order to promote the representation of diverse views on the Board of Directors. Stockholder recommendations of candidates for Board membership will be considered when submitted to Corporate Secretary, Sonic Foundry, Inc., 222 W. Washington Ave., Madison, WI 53703. When submitting candidates for nomination to be elected at Sonic’s annual meeting of stockholders, stockholders must also follow the notice procedures and provide the information required by Sonic's bylaws.

In particular, for a stockholder to nominate a candidate for election at the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, the nomination must be delivered or mailed to and received by Sonic's Secretary between November 7, 2017 and December 7, 2017 (or, if the 2018 annual meeting is advanced by more than 30 days or delayed by more than 60 days from March 7, 2018, not earlier than the close of business on the 120th day prior to such annual meeting and not later than the close of business on the later of the 90th day prior to such annual meeting or the tenth calendar day following the date on which public announcement of the date of the annual meeting is first made). The nomination must include the same information as is specified in Sonic's bylaws for stockholder nominees to be considered at an annual meeting, including the following:

- The stockholder's name and address and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the nomination is proposed;
- The stockholder's reason for making the nomination at the annual meeting, and the signed consent of the nominee to serve if elected;
- The number of shares owned by, and any material interest of, the record owner and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the record owner is proposing the nominee;
- A description of any arrangements or understandings between the stockholder, the nominee and any other person regarding the nomination; and
• Information regarding the nominee that would be required to be included in Sonic's proxy statement by the rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, including the nominee's age, business experience for the past five years and any other directorships held by the nominee.

DIRECTORS COMPENSATION

Our directors who are not also our full-time employees, receive an annual retainer of $20,000 in addition to a fee of $1,500 for attendance at each meeting of the Board of Directors and $1,000 per committee meeting attended. In addition, Mr. Kleinman receives an Audit Committee annual retainer of $8,000 and a Compensation Committee annual retainer of $3,000 for his services as chairman of each committee and Mr. Burish receives an annual retainer of $35,000 as compensation for his services as Chairman of the Board of Directors. The retainers earned by each director in fiscal 2016 were awarded in stock rather than in cash using a value per share calculated by reducing the closing price of the stock on the date of the 2016 annual meeting by 15%. The discount was intended to approximate the diminution in value created by restrictions on trading imposed on insiders. The total fee compensation earned by the four non-employee directors combined in Fiscal 2016 was $175,000. When traveling from out-of-town, the members of the Board of Directors are also eligible for reimbursement for their travel expenses incurred in connection with attendance at Board meetings and Board Committee meetings. Directors who are also employees do not receive any compensation for their participation in Board or Board Committee meetings.

Pursuant to the 2008 Sonic Foundry Non-Employee Amended Directors Stock Option Plan (the “Directors Plan”) we grant to each non-employee director who is reelected or who continues as a member of the Board of Directors at each annual stockholders meeting a stock option to purchase 2,000 shares of Common Stock. Further, the chair of our Audit Committee receives an additional stock option grant to purchase 500 shares of Common Stock per year pursuant to Sonic’s Non-Employee Amended Directors Stock Option Plan.

The exercise price of each stock option granted was equal to the market price of Common Stock on the date the stock option was granted. Stock options issued under the Directors Plan vest fully on the first anniversary of the date of grant and expire after ten years from date of grant. An aggregate of 100,000 shares are reserved for issuance under the Directors Plan.

If any change is made in the stock subject to the Directors Plan, or subject to any option granted thereunder, the Directors Plan and options outstanding thereunder will be appropriately adjusted as to the type(s), number of securities and price per share of stock subject to such outstanding options.

The options and warrants set forth above have an exercise price equal to the fair market value of the underlying common stock on the date of grant. The term of all such options is ten years.
The following table summarizes cash and equity compensation provided our non-employee directors during the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Fees Earned Or Paid In</th>
<th>Stock Awards</th>
<th>Option Awards</th>
<th>Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation</th>
<th>Change in Pension Value and Non-qualified Deferred Compensation Earnings</th>
<th>All Other Compensation</th>
<th>Total ($)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mark D. Burish</td>
<td>10,500</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>3,340</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>73,840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David C. Kleinman</td>
<td>10,500</td>
<td>36,000</td>
<td>4,175</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50,675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frederick H. Kopko</td>
<td>4,500</td>
<td>23,000</td>
<td>3,340</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30,840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul S. Peercy (4)</td>
<td>3,500</td>
<td>22,500</td>
<td>3,340</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>29,340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brian T. Wiegand</td>
<td>7,500</td>
<td>23,000</td>
<td>3,340</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>33,840</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) The amount reported in column (b) is the total of retainer fees and meeting attendance fees paid in cash.
(2) The amount reported in column (c) is the total of retainer fees and meeting attendance fees awarded in common stock.
(3) The amount reported in column (d) is the aggregate grant date fair value of options granted during the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016 in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. Each director received an option award of 2,000 shares on March 3, 2016 at an exercise price of $6.42 with a grant date fair value of $3,340. In addition, Mr. Kleinman received a grant of 500 shares on March 3, 2016 at an exercise price of $6.42 with a grant date fair value of $835 in connection with his position as chair of the Audit Committee.
(4) Mr. Peercy retired from the Board in June 2016.

**EXECUTIVE OFFICERS OF SONIC**

Our executive officers, who are appointed by the Board of Directors, hold office for one-year terms or until their respective successors have been duly elected and have qualified. There are no family relationships between any of the executive officers of Sonic.

**Gary R. Weis** serves as both our Chief Executive and Chief Technology Officer. (See "Directors Continuing in Office ".)

**Kenneth A. Minor**, age 54, has been our Chief Financial Officer since June 1997, Assistant Secretary from December 1997 to February 2001 and Secretary since February 2001. From September 1993 to April 1997, Mr. Minor was employed as Vice President and Treasurer for Fruehauf Trailer Corporation, a manufacturer and global distributor of truck trailers and related aftermarket parts and service where he was responsible for financial, treasury and investor relations functions. Prior to 1993, Mr. Minor served in various senior accounting and financial positions for public and private corporations as well as the international accounting firm of Deloitte Haskins and Sells. Mr. Minor is a certified public accountant and has a B.B.A. degree in accounting from Western Michigan University.

**Robert M. Lipps**, age 45, has been Executive Vice President of Sales since April 2008, joining Sonic Foundry in April 2006 as Vice President of International Sales and assuming expanded responsibility for U.S. central sales in 2007. Mr. Lipps leads the company’s global sales organization including oversight of domestic, international and channel sales. He holds 15 years of sales leadership, business development and emerging market expertise in the technology and manufacturing sectors, including sales and channel management. From January 2004 to March 2006 he served as General Manager of Natural Log Homes LLC, a New Zealand based manufacturer of log homes. From July 1999 to Dec 2002 he served as Latin America Regional Manager of Adaytum, a software publisher of planning and performance.
management solutions, (acquired by Cognos Software, an IBM Company, in January 2003) and from May 1996 to July 1999 he served as International Sales Manager for Persoft, a software publisher of host access and mainframe connectivity solutions (acquired by Esker software in 1998). Mr. Lipps has a B.S. degree in Marketing from the University of Wisconsin at La Crosse.

SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT

The following table shows information known to us about the beneficial ownership of our Common Stock as of January 10, 2017, by each stockholder known by us to own beneficially more than 5% of our Common Stock, each of our executive officers named in the Summary Compensation Table (“Named Executive Officers”), each of our directors, and all of our directors and executive officers as a group. Unless otherwise noted, the mailing address for these stockholders is 222 West Washington Avenue, Madison, Wisconsin 53703.

Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC, and includes voting or investment power with respect to shares. Shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of stock options or warrants exercisable within 60 days after January 10, 2017, which we refer to as Presently Exercisable Options or Presently Exercisable Stock Warrants, are deemed outstanding for computing the percentage ownership of the person holding the options but are not deemed outstanding for computing the percentage ownership of any other person. Unless otherwise indicated below, to our knowledge, all persons named in the table have sole voting and investment power with respect to their shares of common stock, except to the extent authority is shared by spouses under applicable law. The inclusion of any shares in this table does not constitute an admission of beneficial ownership for the person named below.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Beneficial Owner(1)</th>
<th>Number of Shares of Class Beneficially Owned</th>
<th>Percent of Class(2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common Stock</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wealth Trust Axiom LLC (3)</td>
<td>513,005</td>
<td>11.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Radnor Corp Center, suite 520 Radnor PA 19087</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrew D. Burish(4)</td>
<td>473,897</td>
<td>10.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8020 Excelsior Drive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madison, WI, 53717</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark D. Burish(5)</td>
<td>397,893</td>
<td>8.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 East Main St.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madison, WI 53703</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gary R. Weis(6)</td>
<td>337,742</td>
<td>7.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenneth A. Minor(7)</td>
<td>194,466</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert M. Lipps(8)</td>
<td>176,372</td>
<td>3.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frederick H. Kopko, Jr.(9)</td>
<td>52,841</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 South LaSalle Street</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicago, IL 60603</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David C. Kleinman(10)</td>
<td>44,971</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101 East 58th Street</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicago, IL 60637</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brian T. Wiegand (11)</td>
<td>28,588</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600 Aspen Commons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middleton, WI 53562</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All current Executive Officers and Directors as a Group (7 persons)(12)</td>
<td>1,232,873</td>
<td>24.1%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* less than 1%

(1) Sonic believes that the persons named in the table above, based upon information furnished by such persons, except as set forth in notes (3) where such information is based on a Schedule 13G, have, except as set forth in note (3), sole voting and dispositive power with respect to the number of shares indicated as beneficially owned by them.

(2) Applicable percentages are based on 4,416,423 shares outstanding, adjusted as required by rules promulgated by the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(3) Information is based on Schedule 13G filed on January 11, 2017 by Albert C. Matt, President of Wealth Trust Axiom LLC. Based on such information, Wealth Trust Axiom LLC has sole dispositive power but not sole voting power with respect to such shares.

(4) Includes 38,897 shares subject to Presently Exercisable Common Stock Warrants. Information is based on information provided to the Company on December 31, 2016.

(5) Includes 35,905 shares subject to presently Exercisable Warrants and 14,000 shares subject to Presently Exercisable Options.

(6) Includes 257,868 shares subject to Presently Exercisable Options.

(7) Includes 165,547 shares subject to Presently Exercisable Options.

(8) Includes 174,297 shares subject to Presently Exercisable Options.
Includes 20,000 shares subject to Presently Exercisable Options.
Includes 25,000 shares subject to Presently Exercisable Options.
Includes 10,000 shares subject to Presently Exercisable Options.
Includes an aggregate of 666,712 Presently Exercisable Options.

Compensation Discussion and Analysis

Introduction

This Compensation Discussion and Analysis describes our compensation strategy, policies, programs and practices for the executive officers identified in the Summary Compensation Table. Throughout this proxy statement, we refer to these individuals, who serve as our Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer and Executive Vice President of Sales as the “executive officers.”

The Executive Compensation Committee (“Committee”) establishes and oversees our compensation and employee benefits programs and approves the elements of total compensation for the executive officers. The day-to-day design and administration of our retirement and employee benefit programs available to our employees are handled by our Human Resources and Finance Department employees. The Committee is responsible for reviewing these programs with management and approving fundamental changes to them.

Overview and Objectives of our Executive Compensation Program

The compensation program for our executive officers is designed to attract, motivate, reward and retain highly qualified individuals who can contribute to Sonic’s growth with the ultimate objective of increasing stockholder value. Our compensation program consists of several forms of compensation: base salary, annual bonus, long-term incentives and limited perquisites and benefits.

Base salary and annual bonus are cash-based while long-term incentives consist of stock option awards. The Committee does not have a specific allocation goal between cash and equity-based compensation or between annual and long-term incentive compensation. Instead, the Committee relies on the process described in this discussion and analysis in its determination of compensation levels and allocations for each executive officer.

The Committee established performance metrics for each of its Named Executive Officers in fiscal 2016 designed to match Company performance to the amount of incentive compensation paid to such officers following completion of the fiscal year.

The recommendations of the Chief Executive Officer play a significant role in the compensation-setting process. The Chief Executive Officer provides the Committee with an annual overall assessment of Sonic’s achievements and performance, his evaluation of individual performance and his recommendations for annual compensation and long-term incentive awards. The Committee has discretion to accept, reject or modify the Chief Executive Officer’s recommendations. The Committee determines the compensation for the Chief Executive Officer in an executive session.

Market Competitiveness

The Committee’s target is for total cash compensation to average between the 50th and 75th percentile of published compensation data derived from two sources: (i) a peer group of companies that are in our industry, competitors for key talent, or with similar financial characteristics; and (ii) published market survey data for companies within our revenue range. The peer group data was obtained from the most recently filed proxy statement of 14 publicly-traded technology companies with annual revenues ranging from approximately $25 million to just over $100 million; market capitalization of approximately $20 million to approximately $200 million and approximately 400 employees or less. The following companies comprised the peer group for the study: Adesto Technologies, Corp, ARI Network Services Inc., Autobytel Inc., Bsqare Corporation, Datawatch Corp., FalconStor Software Inc., GlobalSCAPE Inc., Glowpoint Inc., GSE Systems Inc., Inuvo Inc., MAM Software Group, Inc., Qumu Corporation and Smith Micro Software Company. Given competitive recruiting pressures, the Committee retains its discretion to
deviate from this target under appropriate circumstances. The Committee periodically receives updates of the published compensation data.

Pay for Performance

The Committee believes that both long and short term compensation of executive officers should correlate to Sonic’s overall financial performance. Incentive payouts will be larger with strong performance and smaller if Sonic’s financial results decline. From time to time, extraordinary Board-approved initiatives in a fiscal year, such as a restructuring, acquisition, or divestiture, are considered by the Committee in its overall evaluation of Sonic’s performance.

Peer Group Analysis

Compensation data came from a peer group of fourteen public companies that we consider similar to our market for sales, or for key talent, or with similar financial or other characteristics such as number of employees. The companies in the peer group are described above.

Components of Executive Compensation

Base Salary

The Committee seeks to pay the executive officers a competitive base salary in recognition of their job responsibilities for a publicly held company. As noted above, the target compensation range for an executive’s total cash compensation (salary and bonus) is between the 50th and 75th percentile of the market data reviewed by the Committee.

As part of determining annual compensation review, the Committee also considers the Chief Executive Officer’s recommendation regarding individual performance as well as internal equitable considerations.

In evaluating individual performance, the Committee considers initiative, leadership, tenure, experience, skill set for the particular position, knowledge of industry and business, and execution of strategy in placing the individual within the range outlined.

The Committee considered base wage changes for Messrs. Weis, Minor and Lipps at a meeting of the Committee held on December 1, 2016. The Committee increased the base compensation for Messrs. Weis, Minor and Lipps by 3% – calculating new base wages of $489,883, $301,986 and $249,811, respectively. After its review of all sources of market data as described above, the Committee believes that the base salaries and the bonuses described are within its targeted range for total cash compensation.

Annual Performance-Based Variable Compensation

The performance-based variable compensation reported for each executive officer represents compensation that was earned based on the fiscal 2016 incentive plan. The following describes the methodologies used by the Compensation Committee to determine the final annual performance-based variable compensation earned by each executive officer:

Selection of Performance Metrics. For fiscal 2016, the Compensation Committee designed a short-term incentive program (“STIP”) driven by four performance measures that it determined were appropriate to drive desired business behavior for the Company and would correlate positively with total shareholder return. These measures were the Company’s results with respect to (1) customer billings, (2) adjusted EBITDA, (3) customer satisfaction, and (4) the officer’s achievement of certain individual goals. Messrs. Weis, Minor and Lipps were included in the plan. Mr. Lipps’ short term incentive plan included a separate component based solely on the level of customer billings achieved.

Establishment of Incentive Goals and Payout Approach. The Compensation Committee designed the relationship between pay and performance to ensure that desired performance would be rewarded with material payouts. Similarly,
performance that did not meet the goals would reduce the performance-based variable compensation payout to as low as zero. In setting the performance levels, the Compensation Committee strived to establish challenging but achievable goals. The factors considered by the Compensation Committee in assessing the challenge inherent in the goals included:

- Management’s internal operating plan; and
- Customer satisfaction.

**Payout Based on Performance Against Goals.** For fiscal 2016 the Company’s performance, as evaluated by the Compensation Committee, lead to the determination that no objectives were met with regard to financial performance of the Company but that individual goals and customer satisfaction targets were met. Therefore 40% of the target bonus amounts were earned under the STIP compensation plan. The STIP earned by Messrs. Weis, Minor and Lipps were $95,123, $41,047 and $28,289, respectively. Total billings – based incentives paid to Mr. Lipps during fiscal 2016 was $49,848. In order to maximize liquidity, management recommended to the Compensation Committee that any cash component of the bonus be deferred until the collection of a significant account receivable, expected in April 2017. Management also proposed that the three executive officers be offered a choice to receive, at their election, all or a portion of their bonus in a form of equity rather than cash, further saving the Company cash. The mechanics of the program, as proposed by management, is to (1) grant a stock option equal to the amount of bonus the individual elects to defer, divided by the price of the stock at the time of grant with a vest date one year from the date of grant, or immediate vesting upon termination of employment for any reason; (2) upon exercise, grant a deferred bonus equal to the exercise price of the option, and (3) grant a tax gross-up at the time the individual exercises the option and receives the deferred bonus. The committee approved the recommendations. Messrs. Weis and Minor elected to receive 50% of their bonus in this form and received, in lieu of payment of their bonus, a stock option grant of 10,012 and 4,320 shares, respectively.

**Stock Options**

The Committee has a long-standing practice of providing long-term incentive compensation grants to the executive officers. The Committee believes that such grants, in the form of stock options, help align our executive officers’ interests with those of Sonic’s stockholders. All stock options have been granted under our 1995 Stock Option Plan, the 1999 Non-Qualified Plan or the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan (“Employee Plans”). All but the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan are now terminated.

The Committee reviews option grant recommendations by the Chief Executive Officer for each executive officer, but retains full discretion to accept, reject or revise each recommendation. The Committee’s policy is to grant options on the date it approves them or such other future date as the Committee may agree at the time of approval. The exercise price is determined in accordance with the terms of the Employee Plan and cannot be less than the Fair Market Value, as defined in the Plan, of Sonic’s common stock. The Committee typically grants options once a year, but may grant options to newly hired executives at other times.

In making its determinations, the Committee considers the number of options or shares owned by the executive officers.

On December 1, 2016 the Committee approved awards to Messrs. Weis, Minor and Lipps of option grants, effective two days following the release of results, to purchase 75,053, 41,273 and 41,273 shares of common stock, respectively, with the strike price equal to the closing price of Sonic’s stock on that date, which was $4.75. Each grant will vest one third each on the first, second and third anniversaries of the grant.

**Health and Welfare Benefits**

Our officers are covered under the same health and welfare plans, including our 401(k) plan, as salaried employees.
The Company has employment agreements with Messrs. Minor and Lipps. Pursuant to such employment agreements, Messrs. Minor and Lipps receive annual base salaries subject to increase each year at the discretion of the Board of Directors. Messrs. Minor and Lipps are also entitled to incidental benefits of employment under the agreements. Each of the employment agreements provides that a cash severance payment be made upon termination, other than for cause, or upon death or disability. In each case, such cash severance is equal to the highest cash compensation paid in any of the last three fiscal years immediately prior to termination. In addition, Messrs. Minor and Lipps will receive immediate vesting of all previously unvested common stock and stock options and have the right to voluntarily terminate their employment, and receive the same severance arrangement detailed above following (i) any “person” becoming a “beneficial” owner of stock of Sonic Foundry representing 50% or more of the total voting power of Sonic Foundry’s then outstanding stock; or, (ii) Sonic Foundry is acquired by another entity through the purchase of substantially all of its assets or securities; or (iii) Sonic Foundry is merged with another entity, consolidated with another entity or reorganized in a manner in which any “person” is or becomes a “beneficial” owner of stock of the surviving entity representing 50% or more of the total voting power of the surviving entity’s then outstanding stock; and, within two years and ninety days of any such event, Messrs. Minor or Lipps, as the case may be, is demoted without cause or his title, authority, status or responsibilities are substantially altered, their salary is reduced or the principal office is more than 50 miles outside the Madison metropolitan area. Pursuant to the employment agreements, each of Messrs. Minor and Lipps has agreed not to disclose our confidential information and not to compete against us during the term of his employment agreement and for a period of one year thereafter. Such non-compete clauses may not be enforceable, or may only be partially enforceable, in state courts of relevant jurisdictions.

The Company also has an employment agreement with Mr. Weis for his services as Chief Executive Officer and Chief Technology Officer. Pursuant to the terms of the amended and restated employment agreement, Mr. Weis will receive an annual base salary subject to increase at the discretion of the Board. Mr. Weis may also receive a performance bonus at the discretion of the Board.

The employment agreement continues in effect until terminated as set forth therein. In the event Mr. Weis’s employment is terminated without cause, as defined in the employment agreement, or in the event his employment is constructively terminated, Mr. Weis will be entitled to receive, in equal bi-weekly installments over a one-year period, compensation equal to one and five hundredths (1.05) multiplied by the highest cash compensation paid to Mr. Weis in any of the last three years immediately prior to his termination. In the event of a Change of Control, as defined in the amended and restated employment agreement, Mr. Weis is entitled to terminate the agreement within one year following such Change of Control, in which event he shall be entitled to receive, in a lump sum payable within thirty days of such termination, compensation equal to two and one-tenth (2.1) multiplied by the highest cash compensation paid to Mr. Weis in any of the last three fiscal years immediately prior to his termination. In any of the above events, (i) all of Mr. Weis’s unvested stock options and stock grants will vest immediately upon termination, and (ii) Mr. Weis will receive health insurance continuation as required by COBRA, salary accrued to the date of termination, and any accrued vacation pay. Mr. Weis has further agreed not to disclose the Company’s proprietary information, and, until one year following the termination of his employment agreement, not to compete with the Company or solicit the Company’s employees. Such non-compete clause may not be enforceable, or may be only partially enforceable, in state courts of relevant jurisdiction.

For illustrative purposes, if Sonic terminated the employment of Mr. Weis (not for cause) on September 30, 2016, Sonic would be obligated to pay $764,891, representing 1.05 times the cash compensation paid Mr. Weis during fiscal 2014 (fiscal year with highest cash compensation in three year period preceding September 30, 2016) and $1,529,782 if Mr. Weis elected to terminate his employment on September 30, 2016, following a change of control as defined in the employment agreement. If Sonic terminated Messrs. Minor and Lipps on September 30, 2016, (not for cause), or if Messrs. Minor and Lipps elected to terminate their employment following a demotion or alteration of duties on September 30, 2016, and a change of control as defined in the employment agreements had occurred, Sonic would be obligated to pay $410,145 and $378,339, respectively (based on fiscal 2014 compensation which was the fiscal year with highest cash compensation in three year period preceding September 30, 2016). In addition, any non-vested rights of Messrs. Weis, Minor and Lipps under the Employee Plans, would vest as of the date of employment termination. The
value of accelerated vesting of the options under these circumstances would be $148,000 for Mr. Weis and $82,000 for both Messrs. Minor and Lipps.

Personal Benefits

Our executives receive a limited number of personal benefits certain of which are considered taxable income to them and which are described in the footnotes to the section of this Proxy Statement entitled “Summary Compensation Table.”

Internal Revenue Code Section 162(m)

Internal Revenue Code Section 162(m) limits the ability of a public company to deduct compensation in excess of $1 million paid annually to each of the Chief Executive Officer and each of the other executive officers named in the Summary Compensation Table. There are exemptions from this limit, including compensation that is based on the attainment of performance goals that are established by the Committee and approved by the Company stockholders. No executive officer was affected by this limitation in fiscal 2016.

COMPENSATION COMMITTEE REPORT

The Compensation Committee of Sonic has reviewed and discussed the Compensation Discussion and Analysis required by Item 402(b) of Regulation S-K with management and, based on such review and discussions, the Compensation Committee recommended to the Board that the Compensation Discussion and Analysis be included in the Proxy Statement.

COMPENSATION COMMITTEE

David C. Kleinman, Chair
Mark D. Burish
### Summary Compensation

The following table sets forth the compensation of our principal executive officer, our principal financial officer and our other executive officer for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name and Principal Position</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Salary ($)</th>
<th>Bonus ($)</th>
<th>Stock Awards ($)</th>
<th>Option Awards ($)</th>
<th>Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation ($)</th>
<th>Change in Pension Value and Non-qualified Deferred Compensation Earnings ($)</th>
<th>All Other Compensation ($)</th>
<th>Total ($)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gary R. Weis</td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>475,615</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>157,350</td>
<td>95,123</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9,021</td>
<td>737,109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Executive and Officer</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>473,504</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>140,596</td>
<td>95,123</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10,600</td>
<td>719,823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Technology Officer</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>452,705</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>202,358</td>
<td>275,763</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10,400</td>
<td>941,226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenneth A. Minor</td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>293,190</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>84,347</td>
<td>41,047</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>17,299</td>
<td>435,883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Financial Officer and Secretary</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>291,888</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>77,328</td>
<td>41,047</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>17,886</td>
<td>428,149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>280,877</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>111,296</td>
<td>129,268</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>17,774</td>
<td>539,215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert M. Lipps</td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>235,739</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>76,355</td>
<td>93,279</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9,950</td>
<td>415,323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Vice</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>234,692</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>77,328</td>
<td>92,485</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9,945</td>
<td>414,450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>President - Sales</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>225,084</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>111,296</td>
<td>153,255</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10,988</td>
<td>500,623</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) The option awards in column (f) represent the aggregate grant date fair value computed in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718 for stock options granted during the fiscal year. The assumptions and methodology used in calculating the compensation expense of the option awards are provided in Sonic’s Form 10-K. See Note 1, “Accounting for Stock Based Compensation” in the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements in Sonic’s Form 10-K. The amounts in this column represent value attributed to the awards at the date of grant and not necessarily the actual value that will be realized by the executive. There can be no assurance that the options will ever be exercised (in which case no value will be realized by the executive) or that the value on exercise will equal the ASC Topic 718 value.

(2) The amounts in column (g) represent cash bonuses which were awarded for performance during the prior fiscal year based on a pre-established formula.

(3) The amount shown under column (i) for the fiscal year 2016 includes Sonic’s matching contribution under our 401(k) plan of $9,021, $10,149 and $9,945 for Messrs Weis, Minor and Lipps. Mr. Minor receives $650 per month as a car allowance of which the taxable personal portions were $7,150. Mr. Minor receives a car allowance of $700 per month of which there was no taxable personal portion. Mr. Weis received car and housing allowances totaling $2,500 per month, of which there was no taxable personal portion.
### Grants of Plan-Based Awards

The following table shows the plan-based awards granted to the Named Executive Officers during fiscal 2016.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Grant Date</th>
<th>Threshold ($) (c)</th>
<th>Target ($) (d)</th>
<th>Maximum ($) (e)</th>
<th>Threshold ($) (f)</th>
<th>Target ($) (g)</th>
<th>Maximum ($) (h)</th>
<th># of Units</th>
<th>Exercise or base price of option awards ($/Sh) (j)</th>
<th>Value of Stock and option awards ($l)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gary R. Weis</td>
<td>11/5/15</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>7.17</td>
<td>50,574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenneth A. Minor</td>
<td>11/5/15</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>7.17</td>
<td>77,328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert M. Lipps</td>
<td>11/5/15</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>7.17</td>
<td>77,328</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Sonic grants employee stock options with exercise prices equal to the closing stock price on the date of grant.

(2) The amount reported in column (l) represents the grant date fair value of the award following the required FASB ASC Topic 718 compensation methodology. Grant date fair value is calculated using the Lattice method. See Note 1, “Accounting for Stock Based Compensation” in the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements in Sonic’s Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016 for an explanation of the methodology and assumptions used in FASB ASC Topic 718 valuation. With respect to the option grants, there can be no assurance that the options will ever be exercised (in which case no value will be realized by the executive) or that the value on exercise will equal the FASB ASC Topic 718 value.

Sonic grants options to its executive officers under our employee stock option plans. As of September 30, 2016, options to purchase a total of 1,602,822 shares were outstanding under the plans, and options to purchase 366,886 shares remained available for grant thereunder.
Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year-End

The following table shows information concerning outstanding equity awards as of September 30, 2016 held by the Named Executive Officers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Option Awards</th>
<th>Stock Awards</th>
<th>Equity Incentive Plan Awards: Market or Payout Value of Unearned Shares, Units or Other Rights That Have Not Vested ($)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercisable Options (#)</td>
<td>Unexercisable Options (#)</td>
<td>Equity Incentive Plan Awards: Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Securities Underlying Exercised Options</td>
<td>Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options</td>
<td>Option Exercise Price ($</td>
<td>Option Expiration Date (d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gary R. Weis</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>73,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20,754</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>41,510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50,574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenneth A. Minor</td>
<td>12,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14,120</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27,500</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22,550</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>11,275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11,415</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>22,830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>27,816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert M. Lipps</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14,120</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27,500</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22,550</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>11,275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11,415</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>22,830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>27,816</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) All options were granted under either our stockholder approved Employee Stock Option Plans or the Non-Qualified Stock Option Plan. All unexercisable options listed in the table become exercisable over a three-year period in equal annual installments beginning one year from the date of grant.
Option Exercises and Stock Vested

The following table shows information concerning option exercises in fiscal 2016 by the Named Executive Officers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option Awards</th>
<th>Stock Awards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Shares Acquired on Exercise (#)</td>
<td>Value Realized on Exercise ($)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Equity Compensation Plan Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan category</th>
<th>Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights</th>
<th>Weighted average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights</th>
<th>Number of securities remaining available for future issuance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Equity compensation plans approved by security holders (1)</td>
<td>1,550,264</td>
<td>$8.58</td>
<td>373,389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders (2)</td>
<td>52,558</td>
<td>12.87</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1,602,822</td>
<td>$9.52</td>
<td>373,389</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Consists of the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan, Employee Incentive Stock Option Plan and the Directors Stock Option Plans. For further information regarding these plans, reference is made to Note 5 of the financial statements.

(2) Consists of the Non-Qualified Stock Option Plan. For further information regarding this plan, reference is made to Note 5 of the financial statements.

Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation

The members of the Executive Compensation Committee of Sonic's Board of Directors for fiscal 2016 were those named in the Executive Compensation Committee Report. No member of the Committee was at any time during fiscal 2016 or at any other time an officer or employee of Sonic Foundry, Inc.

No executive officer of Sonic Foundry, Inc. has served on the board of directors or compensation committee of any other entity that has or has had one or more executive officers serving as a member of the Board of Directors of Sonic Foundry.
PROPOSAL TWO: ADVISORY VOTE ON COMPENSATION OF NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

Introduction

The core of Sonic’s executive compensation policies and practices continues to be to pay for performance. Our executive officers are compensated in a manner consistent with our strategy, competitive practice, sound corporate governance principles, and stockholder interests and concerns. We believe our compensation program is strongly aligned with the long-term interests of our stockholders. We urge you to read the Compensation Discussion and Analysis section of this proxy statement for additional details on our executive compensation, including our compensation philosophy and objectives and the 2016 compensation of our Named Executive Officers.

Pursuant to the “Say on Pay” rules enacted pursuant to Section 14A of the Securities Exchange Act, we are asking you to vote on the adoption of the following resolution:

BE IT RESOLVED by the stockholders of Sonic Foundry, Inc., that the stockholders approve the compensation of Sonic’s Named Executive Officers as disclosed in the proxy statement pursuant to the SEC’s compensation disclosure rules.

As an advisory vote, this Proposal is non-binding. Although the vote is non-binding, the Board of Directors and the Compensation Committee value the opinions of our stockholders, and will consider the outcome of the vote when making future compensation decisions for our Named Executive Officers.

Vote Required

The affirmative vote of a majority of the shares of Sonic common stock cast at the Annual Meeting is required for approval of this Proposal.

Recommendation of the Board of Directors

The Board of Directors recommends that the stockholders vote FOR Proposal Two.

PROPOSAL THREE: ADVISORY VOTE ON SELECTION OF FREQUENCY FOR ADVISORY VOTE ON EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION PROPOSAL

As part of the “Say on Pay”, the Sonic stockholders may indicate, by a non-binding advisory vote, the frequency desired at which they will have an advisory vote on the compensation paid to Sonic’s Named Executive Officers. (In other words, how often a proposal similar to this year’s Proposal Two will be included in the matters to be voted on at the Annual Meeting.) The choices available under the Say on Pay rules are every year, every other year, or every third year.

Please mark your proxy card to indicate your preference on this Proposal or your abstention if you wish to abstain. If you fail to indicate your preference, your shares will be treated as though you chose to abstain on this proposal. A plurality of the votes cast on this Proposal will determine the frequency selected by the stockholders. The Board of Directors recommends that you select three years as the desired frequency for a stockholder vote on executive compensation under the Say on Pay rules.

The frequency selected by the stockholders for conducting Say on Pay voting at the Annual Meetings of the stockholders of the Company is not a binding determination. However, the frequency selected will be given due consideration by the Company in its discretion.
PROPOSAL FOUR: PROPOSAL TO AMEND THE 2008 SONIC FOUNDRY EMPLOYEE STOCK PURCHASE PLAN

The Board of Directors believe that it is in the best interest of Sonic and its stockholders to amend the 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan from 150,000 to 200,000. The 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan was approved at the annual stockholders meeting held March 6, 2008 and in the opinion of the Company, enhanced the interest of employees in the continued success of Sonic and served to align the interests of the employees and stockholders. In addition, the Board of Directors is of the opinion that employee stock purchase plans provide an aid in recruiting highly qualified and talented employees. At January 10, 2017 there are 19,039 shares available for issuance under the plan and we typically issue approximately 15,000 shares per year.

For these reasons, the Board of Directors authorized the amendment of the 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "Purchase Plan") to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan from 150,000 to 200,000, subject to the approval of stockholders at the Annual Meeting.

The following is a summary of the material provisions of the Purchase Plan. This summary is qualified in its entirety by reference to the specific provisions of the Purchase Plan, the full text of which is attached to this Proxy Statement as Exhibit 1.

Summary of the Purchase Plan

Common Stock Subject To Plan

Subject to adjustment as provided below, 200,000 shares of Common Stock will be available for issuance under the Purchase Plan. Shares of Common Stock delivered under the Purchase Plan may be authorized and unissued shares or reacquired shares. As of January 10, 2017, the fair market value of one share of Common Stock was $4.95.

Participation

Any employee who has completed 90 days of employment with Sonic or any Designated Subsidiary of Sonic on the first day of each offering period will be eligible to participate in the Purchase Plan. A Designated Subsidiary of Sonic is any majority-owned subsidiary of Sonic that has been designated by the Board of Directors as eligible to participate in the Purchase Plan with respect to its Employees. An employee of Sonic or a Designated Subsidiary of Sonic who, after the grant of an option to purchase, would hold common stock and/or hold outstanding options to purchase stock possessing 5% or more of the total combined voting power or value of Sonic will not be eligible to participate. As of January 10, 2017, approximately 135 employees of Sonic would be eligible to participate in the Purchase Plan.

Purchases Under The Purchase Plan

Sonic will continue to make bi-annual offerings to eligible employees of options to purchase shares of Common Stock under the Purchase Plan on the first trading day of January and July. Each offering period will continue to be for a period of six months from the date of offering, and each eligible employee as of the date of offering will continue to be entitled to purchase shares of Common Stock at a purchase price equal to the lower of 85% of the fair market value of Common Stock on the first trading day of the offering period or 85% of the fair market value of Common Stock on the last trading day of the offering period.

Payment for shares of Common Stock purchased under the Purchase Plan will continue to be made by authorized payroll deductions from an employee's Total Wages. Subject to the terms of the Purchase Plan, eligible employees who desire to participate in the Purchase Plan will designate a stated whole percentage of their total wages, up to a maximum of 10%, to be deducted from their total wages and held by Sonic until the date of purchase. No participant in the Purchase Plan is permitted to purchase Common Stock under the Purchase Plan if such option would permit his or her rights to purchase stock under the Purchase Plan to accrue at a rate that exceeds $25,000 of the fair market value of such shares (determined as of the date of grant of such right), or that exceeds 1,000 shares, for each calendar year during which any option granted to such individual under any such plan is outstanding at any time.
A participant has none of the rights or privileges of a stockholder of Sonic (including the right to receive dividends) until the shares purchased under the Purchase Plan are fully paid for and issued.

Withdrawal

An employee may withdraw from the plan if such request is made at least 30 days prior to the end of a contribution period. Such withdrawal request and the refund of all cash contributions, without interest, will be made as soon as administratively feasible and all options will be cancelled. Once terminated, an employee will be eligible for reenrollment in the plan beginning with the contribution period beginning immediately following the next contribution period.

Termination Of Participation

An employee's participation in the Purchase Plan will be terminated when he or she: (1) voluntarily elects to withdraw his or her entire account; (2) resigns or is discharged from Sonic and all Designated Subsidiaries of Sonic; or (3) dies.

Administration

The Purchase Plan will continue to be administered by the Compensation Committee of the Board or such other committee established by the Board of Directors of Sonic (“the Committee”).

Modification and Termination

The Committee may terminate the Purchase Plan at any time or make any amendment or modification it deems advisable.

Adjustments

Appropriate and proportionate adjustments will be made in the number and class of shares available under the Purchase Plan, and to the rights granted under the Purchase Plan and the prices applicable to such rights, to reflect changes in the outstanding stock that occur because of stock dividends, stock splits, recapitalizations, reorganizations, liquidations, or other similar events.

Transferability

A participant's rights under the Purchase Plan are exercisable only by such participant and may not be transferred in any manner.

Federal Income Tax Consequences

Sonic has been advised that under current law the federal income tax consequences to participants and Sonic of options granted under the Purchase Plan would generally be as set forth in the following summary. This summary is not a complete analysis of all potential tax consequences relevant to participants and Sonic and does not describe tax consequences based on particular circumstances. For these reasons, participants should consult with a tax advisor as to any specific questions regarding the tax consequences of participation in the Purchase Plan.

It is intended that the option to purchase shares of Common Stock granted under the Purchase Plan will constitute an option issued pursuant to an "employee stock purchase plan" within the meaning of Section 423 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended. If shares are purchased under the Purchase Plan, and no disposition of these shares is made within two years of the date of grant of the option, or within one year after the purchase of the shares, then no income will be realized by the employee at the time of the transfer of the shares to such employee. When an employee sells or otherwise disposes of the shares, or in the event of his death (whenever occurring) while owning such shares, there will be included in his or her gross income, as compensation, an amount equal to the lesser of: (i) the amount by which the fair market value of the shares on the first trading day of the offering period exceeds the purchase price for the shares, or (ii) the amount by which the fair market value at the time of disposition or death exceeds the purchase price per share.
Any further gain will be treated for tax purposes as long-term capital gain, provided that the employee holds the shares for the applicable long-term capital gain holding period after the last day of the offering period applicable to such shares.

No deduction will be allowed to Sonic for federal income tax purposes in connection with the grant or exercise of the option to purchase shares under the Purchase Plan, provided there is no disposition of shares by a participant within either the two-year or the one-year periods referred to above. If an employee disposes of the shares within either the two-year or the one-year periods referred to above, he or she will realize ordinary income in the year of disposition in an amount equal to the difference between the purchase price and the fair market value of the shares at the time of exercise of the option, and Sonic will be entitled to a deduction in the same amount. Any difference between the amount received upon such a disposition and the fair market value of the shares at the time of exercise of the option will be capital gain or loss, as the case may be.

**Plan Benefits**

Participation in the Purchase Plan is voluntary and each eligible employee will make his or her own election whether and to what extent to participate in the plan. It is therefore not possible to determine the benefits or amounts that will be received in the future by individual employees or groups of employees under the Purchase Plan.

**Provision to Purchase Additional Shares of Common Stock by Employees and Directors**

Apart from the Plan provisions set forth above, the Committee has the power and authority to allow any Employee or director to receive Shares in lieu of cash compensation or cash fees. In such event, in order to account for the non-transferability of any Shares acquired thereunder, the Committee may discount the value of such Shares by up to 15% of the then Fair Market Value of unvested Shares of Common Stock. This portion of the Plan will allow Employees and directors the opportunity to acquire Shares in accordance with such special terms and conditions as the Committee may establish from time to time, which terms and conditions may modify the terms and conditions of the Plan set forth elsewhere in the Plan. Without limiting the authority of the Committee, the special terms and conditions which may be established with respect to such Employees and directors who elect to participate in this portion of the Plan, and which need not be the same for all such Employees and directors, include but are not limited to the right to participate, procedures for elections to participate, the purchase price of any Shares to be acquired, and the maximum amount of Shares which may be purchased by any participating Employee or director. Any purchases made pursuant to the provisions of this portion of the Plan shall not be subject to the requirements of Section 423 of the Code and the federal income tax consequences set forth above shall not apply thereto.

**Vote Required**

The amendment of the Purchase Plan requires the approval of a majority of the outstanding shares present and entitled to vote at the meeting.

The Board of Directors unanimously recommends a vote FOR Proposal 4 to amend the Employee Stock Purchase Plan.

**PROPOSAL FIVE: PROPOSAL TO AMEND THE 2009 STOCK INCENTIVE PLAN**

We are asking our stockholders to approve an amendment to the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan by 900,000 at the Annual Meeting (in this proposal, the “Amended 2009 Plan”). On January 25, 2017, the Board approved the Amended 2009 Plan, subject to stockholder approval. The purpose of the Amended 2009 Plan is to promote the interests of the Company and its stockholders by strengthening the Company’s ability to attract and retain experienced and knowledgeable employees and to furnish additional incentives to those employees upon whose judgment, initiative and efforts the Company largely depends. The 2009 Plan provides for the grant of up to 1,800,000 stock options. As of September 30, 2016, the Company had
granted options for 1,613,111 shares and had forfeitures totaling 210,143, leaving a balance of 397,032. During the quarter ended December 31, 2016, the Company granted options for 300,270 shares under the 2009 Plan and cancelled 2,974 options, leaving a balance at December 31, 2016 of 99,736. We recommend approval of the Amended 2009 Plan to provide for an aggregate number of shares that may be subject to awards under the Amended 2009 Plan of 2,700,000.

We presently anticipate that the number of Available Shares under the Amended 2009 Plan will be sufficient for issuance of awards under our equity compensation for three years. Except with respect to the number of shares of common stock subject to equity awards, there are no material differences between the prior 2009 Stock Incentive Plan and the Amended 2009 Plan.

**Why You Should Vote for the Amended 2009 Plan**

*There are a Limited Number of Options Remaining to be Granted Under the 2009 Plan*

Equity awards are currently made to officers and employees exclusively from our 2009 Stock Incentive Plan. As of December 31, 2016, we had a balance of 99,736 options remaining to be granted under our 2009 Stock Incentive Plan. We currently grant approximately 300,000 options per year. If we do not adopt the Amended 2009 Plan we will be unable to issue a significant number of equity awards unless our stockholders approve a new stock plan. We anticipate that we will have difficulty attracting, retaining, and motivating officers and employees if we were unable to make equity awards to them. In addition, we believe that equity awards are an effective compensation vehicle because they offer significant potential value with a smaller impact on current income and cash flow. Therefore, we are asking our stockholders to approve the Amended 2009 Plan.

*Equity Incentives are an Important Part of our Compensation Philosophy*

Approval of the Amended 2009 Plan is critical to our ongoing effort to create stockholder value. As discussed in the Compensation Discussion and Analysis earlier in this Proxy Statement, equity-based incentives are an integral part of our compensation program. We grant stock options to substantially all of our employees. We believe we must continue to offer a competitive equity compensation plan in order to attract, retain and motivate the talent necessary to successfully grow the Company.

*The Amended 2009 Plan Combines Compensation and Governance Best Practices*

Some of the key features of the Plans that are designed to protect our stockholders’ interest and to reflect corporate governance best practices are as follows:

- *Continued broad-based eligibility for equity awards.* We grant equity awards to substantially all of our employees. By doing so, we link employee interests with stockholder interests throughout the organization and motivate our employees to act as owners of the Company.

- *Reasonable share counting provisions.* In general, when awards granted under the Plans expire or are cancelled, the shares reserved for those awards will be returned to the share reserve and be available for future issuance under the Plans. However, shares of common stock received from the exercise of stock options or withheld for taxes will not be returned to the share reserve.

- *Option exercise price.* Under the Amended 2009 Plan, the exercise price per share of stock options may not be less than 100% of the fair market value on the date of grant.

- *Repricing is not allowed.* Under the Amended 2009 Plan, repricing of stock options (including reduction in the exercise price of stock options or replacement of an award with cash or another award type) is prohibited without prior stockholder approval.
Limitations on Amendments. The Amended 2009 Plan requires stockholder approval for material amendments to the Plan, including (i) a material increase in the benefits accrued to participants under the Plan, (ii) a material increase in the number of securities that may be issued under the Plan, (iii) a material expansion of the class of individuals eligible to participate in the Plan, or (iv) an extension to the term of the Plan.

Description of the Amended 2009 Plan

A description of the principal features of the Amended 2009 Plan is set forth below. The summary is qualified in its entirety by the detailed provisions of the Amended 2009 Plan, a copy of which is attached to this Proxy Statement as Exhibit 2.

Purpose. The Amended 2009 Plan is intended to provide incentives to the Company’s officers, directors, and employees by providing them with opportunities to acquire a direct proprietary interest in the operations and future success of the Company.

Effective Date. The Amended 2009 Plan will become effective on the date on which it is approved by the stockholders (the “Effective Date”).

Types of Awards. The Amended 2009 Plan provides for the following types of awards: (i) incentive stock options, (ii) non-qualified stock options, (iii) restricted stock awards, (iv) restricted stock units, (v) performance stock awards, (vi) and other stock-based awards (collectively, “Awards”).

Administration. Our Board, or a committee of the Board consisting of at least two members of the Board, will continue to administer the Amended 2009 Plan. The Board may delegate responsibility for administration of the Plan to different committees, subject to any limitations the Board deems appropriate. The Board, or any two member committee of the Board (hereinafter, the “Committee”), has full authority to administer the Plan, including authority to interpret and construe any relevant provisions of the Plan, to adopt rules and regulations that it deems necessary, to determine which individuals are eligible to participate and/or receive Awards under the Plan, to determine the amount and/or number of shares subject to the Award, and to determine the terms of the Award (which need not be identical). The Committee may delegate its authority to grant Awards under the Amended 2009 Plan to one or more of the Company’s executive officers to the extent permitted by applicable law, provided the grantees are not executive officers or directors of the Company.

The Committee has the power to approve the form of Award agreements, and to amend or adopt sub-plans to permit employees who reside outside the United States to participate in the Amended 2009 Plan. The Committee does not have authority under the Amended 2009 Plan to reduce the exercise or purchase price of any outstanding Award or to cancel and re-grant an outstanding Award if such action would reduce the exercise or purchase price of the Award, in either case, absent prior approval of the stockholders for such an action.

The Board has delegated administration of the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan, and any amendments thereto, including the Amended 2009 Plan to the Executive Compensation Committee.

Stock Subject to the Amended 2009 Plan. The common stock issued or to be issued under the Amended 2009 Plan consists of authorized but unissued shares or issued shares that have been reacquired by the Company in any manner. Subject to adjustment made in connection with a recapitalization, change in control and certain other events set forth in the Amended 2009 Plan, the maximum number of shares subject to Awards which may be issued pursuant to the Amended 2009 Plan will be 2,700,000 shares of common stock. In addition, if any Award granted under the Amended 2009 Plan is not exercised or is forfeited, lapses or expires, or otherwise terminates without delivery of any common stock subject thereto, the shares subject to such Award will again be available for future grants of Awards under the Plan. The number of shares of common stock available for issuance under the Amended 2009 Plan will not be increased by any shares tendered or Awards surrendered in connection with the purchase of shares of common stock upon exercise of an option or any shares of common stock deducted or forfeited from an Award in connection with our withholding obligations.
Eligibility and Limitations on Grants. Awards under the Amended 2009 Plan may be made to employees, officers, directors and consultants of the Company or any present or future parent or subsidiary of the Company or other business venture in which the Company has a substantial interest (‘‘Related Entities’’). Awards made to non-employee directors under the Amended 2009 Plan may only be granted and administered by a committee meeting the independence requirements of the exchange on which the Company’s common stock is listed.

Terms of Options. The Amended 2009 Plan permits grants of stock options intended to qualify as incentive stock options (“ISOs”) under Section 422 of the Internal Revenue Code (the “Code”) and stock options that do not qualify as ISOs (“non-qualified” options). Options granted under the Amended 2009 Plan will be non-qualified options if they fail to qualify as ISOs or exceed the annual limit on ISOs. Only employees of the Company may receive ISOs. Non-qualified options may be granted to any persons eligible to receive ISOs and to directors and consultants of the Company. The exercise price of a stock option may not be less than 100% of the fair market value of the stock subject to the option on the date of grant (for an incentive stock option, 110% if the optionee is a 10% holder of our common stock). The term of option will not be longer than ten years (or, in the case of a 10% owner of our common stock, five years if the option is an ISO) and may be subject to restrictions on transfer.

Options may be exercised in whole or in part with written or electronic notice to the Company’s delegate for receipt of such notice, accompanied by full payment of the exercise price for the number of shares being purchased. Subject to the discretion of the Committee, the exercise price may be paid in cash, by check, pursuant to a broker-assisted cashless exercise, by delivery of other shares of common stock, by a “net exercise arrangement”, or any other form of legal consideration deemed acceptable by the Committee.

Options generally terminate ninety days after termination of an optionee’s service or as set forth in the option agreement. The optionee may have longer to exercise when termination is due to disability or death. No option may be exercised beyond the expiration of its term. The ability to exercise options may be accelerated by the Committee, subject to compliance with the provisions of the Amended 2009 Plan.

Terms of Restricted Stock. The Amended 2009 Plan permits grants of restricted stock entitling recipients to acquire shares of the Company’s common stock, subject to the right of the Company to require forfeiture of such shares in the event that conditions specified by the Committee in the applicable award agreement are not satisfied. Subject to the provisions of the Amended 2009 Plan, the Committee will determine the terms and conditions of any restricted stock award, including the grant date and vesting schedule for the award.

Terms of Restricted Stock Units. The Amended 2009 Plan permits awards of restricted stock units entitling recipients to acquire shares of the Company’s common stock (or the cash equivalent) in the future. Subject to the provisions of the Amended 2009 Plan, the Committee will determine the terms and conditions of any restricted stock unit award, including the grant date and vesting schedule for the award.

Other Stock-Based Awards. The Amended 2009 Plan permits awards of shares of the Company’s common stock, and other awards that are valued by reference to, or are otherwise based on, shares of the Company’s common stock or property, including awards entitling recipients to receive shares of the Company’s common stock in the future. Such awards may also be available as a form of payment in the settlement of other awards granted under the Amended 2009 Plan or as payment in lieu of compensation to which a participant is otherwise entitled. Subject to the discretion of the Committee, the awards may be paid in shares of common stock or cash. Subject to the provisions of the Amended 2009 Plan, the Committee will determine the terms and conditions of such other stock-based awards, including any purchase price that may be applicable to the award.

Performance Awards. Under the Amended 2009 Plan, certain restricted stock awards, restricted stock unit awards and other stock-based awards may be subject to the achievement of performance goals. For performance awards that are intended to qualify as performance-based compensation under Section 162(m) of the Code, the vesting and/or delivery of shares for such awards will occur upon achievement of one or more of the following objective performance measures, as determined by the Committee in its discretion: earnings per share, return on average equity or average assets in relation to a peer group of companies designated by the Committee, earnings, earnings growth, earnings before interest, taxes and amortization (EBITA), operating income, gross or product margins, revenues, expenses, stock price, market share, reductions in non-performing assets, return on sales, assets, equity or investment, regulatory
compliance, satisfactory internal or external audits, improvement of financial ratings, achievement of balance sheet or income statement objectives, net cash provided from continuing operations, stock price appreciation, total shareholder return, cost control, strategic initiatives, net operating profit after tax, pre-tax or after-tax income, cash flow, or a combination of one or more of these measures, which may be absolute in their terms or measured against or in relationship to other companies comparably, similarly or otherwise situated. These performance measures may be adjusted to exclude the effect of various events that may occur during the performance period, including: extraordinary items and any other unusual or non-recurring items; discontinued operations; gains or losses on the dispositions of discontinued operations; the cumulative effects of changes in accounting principles; the writedown of any asset; and charges for restructuring and rationalization programs. In addition, such performance measures:

- may vary by participant and may be different for different performance awards;

- may be particular to a participant or the department, branch, line of business, subsidiary or other unit in which the participant works and may cover such period as may be specified by the Committee; and

- shall be set by the Committee within the time period prescribed by, and shall otherwise comply with the requirements of Section 162(m) of the Code.

Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan, the Committee may adjust downwards, but not upwards, the cash or number of shares payable pursuant to performance awards intended to qualify as performance-based compensation under 162(m) of the Code, and the Committee may not waive the achievement of the applicable performance measures except in the case of the death or disability of the participant or a change in control of the Company.

Awards that are not intended to qualify as performance-based compensation under 162(m) of the Code may be based on these or such other performance measures as the Committee may determine.

Adjustments and Recapitalization. In the event that any change is made to the shares of common stock issuable under the Amended 2009 Plan, whether through merger, consolidation, stock split, stock dividend, extraordinary cash dividend, recapitalization, combination of shares, exchange of shares, or other similar event, then appropriate adjustments will be made to (i) the maximum number and/or class of securities issuable under the Plan, (ii) the number and/or class of securities and, if applicable, price per share in effect under each outstanding Award under the Plan, and (iii) the maximum number of shares issuable to one individual in a calendar year under the Plan.

Change in Control Provisions. In the event of a change in control of the Company, outstanding Awards may be assumed, continued or substituted by the successor corporation. If the successor corporation does not assume, continue or substitute such Awards, then all Awards held by a participant, immediately prior to the effectiveness of the change in control, will become fully vested and exercisable.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in the event of a change in control, all outstanding Awards held by the participant will, immediately prior to the effectiveness of the change in control, become vested and exercisable as to an additional number of shares equal to the number of shares that would have become vested and exercisable on the date twelve months after the effectiveness of the change in control. If the participant has been employed by the Company for less than twelve months immediately prior to the change in control, the number of vested and exercisable shares will be increased by the number of shares that would have become vested and exercisable on the date six months after the consummation of the change in control. In addition, if, within six months following the change in control, the successor corporation terminates the employment of a participant without cause, all Awards held by the participant will become fully vested and exercisable.

Under the Amended 2009 Plan, a “change in control” generally means any of the following events: (i) a person (as defined by Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the Exchange Act, as amended) becomes the beneficial owner of securities representing 35% or more of the combined voting power of the Company’s then outstanding securities; (ii) the Company’s incumbent directors cease to constitute a majority of the Board; (iii) a consummated merger or consolidation of the Company with any other corporation; or (iv) the stockholders approve a plan of liquidation or dissolution or an agreement for the sale of all or substantially all of the Company’s assets.
Term and Amendment of the Plan. The Amended 2009 Plan is scheduled to expire ten years from the Effective Date of the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan. The Board may amend or modify the Amended 2009 Plan in any respect to the extent the amendment or modification does not adversely affect a holder’s rights under any outstanding Award without the holder’s consent; however, stockholder approval is required for any amendment that (i) materially increases the benefits accrued to participants under the Plan, (ii) materially increases the number of securities which may be issued under the Plan, (iii) materially expands the class of individuals eligible to participate in the Plan, or (iv) extends the term of the Plan. In addition, certain amendments may, as determined by the Board in its discretion, require stockholder approval pursuant to applicable laws, rules or regulations, including any applicable exchange on which our common stock is listed.

Tax Withholding. Participants in the Amended 2009 Plan are responsible for the payment of any foreign, federal or state tax that we are required by law to withhold upon any exercise or vesting of an Award. Subject to the discretion of the Committee, participants may satisfy such tax obligations by delivery of shares of common stock, including shares retained from the Award creating the tax obligations, valued at their fair market value. The Company may, to the extent permitted by law, deduct such tax obligations from any payment of any kind otherwise due to the participant.

Federal Income Tax Consequences

The following is a summary of the principal U.S. federal income tax consequences to participants and the Company with respect to participation in the Amended 2009 Plan. It does not describe all federal tax consequences under the Amended 2009 Plan, nor does it discuss state, local or foreign tax consequences.

Incentive Stock Options. An optionee who is granted an incentive stock option does not recognize taxable income at the time the option is granted or upon its exercise, although the exercise is an adjustment item for alternative minimum tax purposes and may subject the optionee to the alternative minimum tax. Upon a disposition of the shares more than two years after grant of the option and more than one year after the exercise of the option, any gain or loss is treated as long-term capital gain or loss. If these holding periods are not satisfied, the optionee recognizes ordinary income at the time of disposition equal to the difference between the exercise price and the lower of (a) the fair market value of the shares at the date of the option exercise or (b) the sale price of the shares. Any gain or loss recognized on such a premature disposition of the shares in excess of the amount treated as ordinary income is treated as long-term or short-term capital gain or loss, depending on the holding period. Unless limited by Section 162(m) of the Code, we are generally entitled to a deduction in the same amount as the ordinary income recognized by the optionee.

Nonstatutory Stock Options. No taxable income is recognized by an optionee upon the grant of a nonstatutory stock option. Upon exercise, the optionee will recognize ordinary income equal to the excess of the fair market value of the purchased shares on the exercise date over the exercise price paid for those shares. Assuming we comply with Section 162(m) of the Code, we will be entitled to an income tax deduction in the tax year in which the optionee recognizes the ordinary income. When the optionee disposes of shares granted as a nonstatutory stock option, any difference between the sale price and the optionee’s exercise price, to the extent not recognized as taxable income as provided above, is treated as long-term or short-term capital gain or loss, depending on the holding period.

Restricted Stock. A grantee who is awarded restricted stock will not recognize any taxable income for federal income tax purposes in the year of the award, provided that the shares of common stock are subject to restrictions (that is, the restricted stock is nontransferable and subject to a substantial risk of forfeiture). However, the grantee may elect under Section 83(b) of the Code to recognize compensation in the year of the award in an amount equal to the fair market value of the common stock on the date of the award (less the purchase price, if any), determined without regard to the restrictions. If the grantee does not make such a Section 83(b) election, the fair market value of the common stock on the date the restrictions lapse (less the purchase price, if any) will be treated as compensation income to the grantee and will be taxable in the year the restrictions lapse and dividends paid while common stock is subject to restrictions will be subject to withholding taxes. If we comply with the restrictions of Section 162(m) of the Code, we will be entitled to a tax deduction in the same amount and generally at the same time as the grantee recognizes ordinary income.
Restricted Stock Units. There are no immediate tax consequences of receiving an award of restricted stock units under the Amended 2009 Plan. A grantee who is awarded restricted stock units will be required to recognize ordinary income in an amount equal to the fair market value of shares issued to such grantee at the end of the restriction period or, if later, the payment date. If we comply with the restrictions of Section 162(m) of the Code, we will be entitled to a tax deduction in the same amount and generally at the same time as the grantee recognizes ordinary income.

Performance Awards. The award of a performance award will have no federal income tax consequences for us or the grantee. The payment of the award is taxable to a grantee as ordinary income. If we comply with the restrictions of Section 162(m) of the Code, we will be entitled to a tax deduction in the same amount and generally at the same time as the grantee recognizes ordinary income.

Section 280(G). To the extent payments that are contingent on a change in control are determined to exceed certain Code limitations, they may be subject to a 20% nondeductible excise tax and our deduction with respect to the associated compensation expense may be disallowed in whole or in part.

Section 409A. The Company intends for awards granted under the Amended 2009 Plan to comply with Section 409A of the Code.

New Plan Benefits

Because the Amended 2009 Plan will not be effective unless and until it is approved by the stockholders, no Awards will be granted under the 2009 Plan in excess of the current share limit until approved. The participants and types of Awards under the Amended 2009 Plan are subject to the discretion of the Committee and, as a result, the benefits or amounts that will be received by any participant or groups of participants if the Amended 2009 Plan is approved are currently not determinable. As of January 10, 2017 there were three executive officers, four non-employee directors, and approximately 135 employees who are eligible to participate in the Amended 2009 Plan. As of the Record Date, the closing price per share of our common stock was $4.95.

General

The amendment of the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan requires the approval of a majority of the outstanding shares entitled to vote at the Annual Meeting.

Recommendation of the Board of Directors

The Board of Directors unanimously recommends a vote FOR proposal 5, to amend the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan.

PROPOSAL SIX: PROPOSAL TO AMEND THE 2008 SONIC FOUNDRY NON-EMPLOYEE DIRECTORS STOCK OPTION PLAN

The Board of Directors recommends amending the 2008 Sonic Foundry Non-Employee Directors Stock Option Plan (the “2008 Plan”) by increasing the shares that may be issued pursuant to the plan from 100,000 to 150,000 (the “Amended Directors Stock Option Plan”).

The purpose of the Amended Directors Stock Option Plan is to promote the interests of Sonic and its stockholders by strengthening Sonic’s ability to attract and retain experienced and knowledgeable non-employee directors and to encourage them to acquire an increased proprietary interest in Sonic. The Amended Directors Stock Option Plan is intended to increase the number of shares pursuant to the plan in order to provide sufficient shares for further grants. The 2008 Plan provided for the grant of up to 100,000 stock options, of which 101,500 were granted under the plan and 8,000 expired, leaving a balance of 6,500 available for grant.
The Amended Directors Stock Option Plan will continue to be administered by the Board of Directors. The Amended Directors Stock Option Plan will continue to provide for a grant of an option to each non-employee director 1) upon his initial appointment to the Board, 2) to each non-employee director who is reelected or who is continuing in offices as a member of the Board after the adjournment of each annual meeting and 3) in the Board’s discretion, other grants to one or more Non-Employee Directors from time to time. Each option grant pursuant to 1) or 2) above is effective to purchase 2,000 shares of Common Stock at an exercise price equal to the fair market value on the date of grant. Other option grants will be in amounts as determined by the Board.

Common Stock that may be issued under the Amended Directors Stock Option Plan pursuant to options shall not exceed in the aggregate One Hundred Thousand (150,000) shares of Common Stock. Except with respect to the number of shares of common stock subject to issuance, there are no material differences between the 2008 Plan and the Amended Directors Stock Option Plan.

Summary of the Amended Directors Stock Option Plan

The following is a summary of the material provisions of the Amended Directors Stock Option Plan. This summary is qualified in its entirety by reference to the specific provisions of the Amended Directors Stock Option Plan, the full text of which is attached to this Proxy Statement as Exhibit 3.

All options granted under the Amended Directors Stock Option Plan are non-statutory — not intended to qualify under Section 422 of the Code, as amended. The federal income tax consequences are similar to those described above with respect to the grant of a non-qualified stock option.

Payment of the option exercise price may be in cash, by delivery of previously owned Common Stock, by any other legally permissible means acceptable to the Board at the time of the grant of the option (including cashless exercise, subject to applicable legal restrictions), or by a combination of such means.

If an optionee ceases to be a director before an option vests, the option will terminate, other than in the case of death, disability or resignation required as a condition of a change in control, in which case all outstanding options granted as of the date of termination shall vest and immediately become exercisable. Each option expires ten years from the date of its grant or earlier in certain circumstances such as death or disability. Options are not transferable at any time except in certain circumstances such as transfers to family members. Options that are forfeited or terminated will again be available for grant. Shares may be authorized but unissued, currently held or reacquired shares. The Board of Directors may amend, terminate or suspend the Plan at any time.

Plan Benefits

Under the 2008 Plan, each of the three non-employee directors received options to purchase 2,000 shares of Common Stock upon initial appointment to the Board and each non-employee director has received and pursuant to the Amended Directors Stock Option Plan, will continue to receive options to purchase an additional 2,000 shares of Common Stock after the adjournment of each annual stockholders meeting. However, no dollar value is assigned to the options because their exercise price is the fair market value of the common stock on the date of grant.

General

The amendment of the 2008 Plan requires the approval of a majority of the outstanding shares entitled to vote at the Annual Meeting.

The Board of Directors unanimously recommends a vote FOR Proposal 6, amending the 2008 Plan.
PROPOSAL SEVEN: RATIFICATION OF APPOINTMENT OF INDEPENDENT AUDITORS

The Board of Directors, upon the recommendation of the Audit Committee, has appointed the firm of Baker Tilly Virchow Krause LLP ("BT") as independent auditors to audit our financial statements for the year ending September 30, 2017, and has further directed that management submit the selection of independent public accountants for ratification by the stockholders at the annual meeting. Representatives of BT are expected to be present at the annual meeting to respond to stockholders' questions and to have the opportunity to make any statements they consider appropriate.

Stockholder ratification of the selection of BT as our independent auditors is not required by our Bylaws or otherwise. However, the Board is submitting the selection of BT to the stockholders for ratification as a matter of good corporate practice. If the stockholders fail to ratify the selection, the Board and the Audit Committee will reconsider whether or not to retain that firm. Even if the selection is ratified, the Board and the Audit Committee in their discretion may direct the appointment of a different independent accounting firm at any time during the year if they determine that such a change would be in the best interests of Sonic and its stockholders.

The ratification of the appointment of BT as independent public accountants requires the approval of a majority of the votes cast at the Annual Meeting.

Recommendation of Board of Directors

The Board of Directors unanimously recommends a vote FOR proposal 7 ratifying the appointment of BT as independent auditors for Sonic Foundry.

Relations with Independent Auditors

The Company, upon the recommendation of its audit committee has selected Baker Tilly Virchow Krause, LLP ("BT") as its independent auditor for the fiscal year ending September 30, 2017.

Audit services performed by BT for Fiscal 2016 and 2015 consisted of the examination of our financial statements, review of fiscal quarter results, and services related to filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). We also retained BT to perform certain audit related services associated with the audit of our benefit plan. All fees paid to BT were reviewed, considered for independence and upon determination that such payments were compatible with maintaining such auditors' independence, approved by Sonic’s audit committee prior to performance.

Fiscal Years 2016 and 2015 Audit Firm Fee Summary

During fiscal years 2016 and 2015, we retained our principal accountant, Baker Tilly Virchow Krause LLP to provide services in the following categories and amounts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years Ended September 30,</th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audit Fees</td>
<td>$191,207</td>
<td>$188,970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit Related</td>
<td>12,400</td>
<td>12,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tax Fees</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All of the services described above were approved by Sonic’s audit committee prior to performance. The Audit Committee may, in its discretion, delegate to one or more of its members the authority to pre-approve any audit or non-audit services to be performed by the independent auditors, provided that any such approvals are presented to the Audit Committee at its next scheduled meeting. The audit committee has determined that the payments made to its independent accountants for these services are compatible with maintaining such auditors’ independence.
REPORT OF THE AUDIT COMMITTEE  

The Audit Committee's role includes the oversight of our financial, accounting and reporting processes, our system of internal accounting and financial controls and our compliance with related legal and regulatory requirements, the appointment, engagement, termination and oversight of our independent auditors, including conducting a review of their independence, reviewing and approving the planned scope of our annual audit, overseeing the independent auditors' audit work, reviewing and pre-approving any audit and non-audit services that may be performed by them, reviewing with management and our independent auditors the adequacy of our internal financial controls, and reviewing our critical accounting policies and the application of accounting principles. The Audit Committee held five meetings during fiscal 2016.

Messrs. Kleinman, Burish and Wiegand meet the rules of the SEC for audit committee membership and are "independent" as that term is used in Item 7(d)(3)(iv) of Schedule 14A under the Exchange Act and under Nasdaq listing standards. A copy of the Audit Committee Charter is available on Sonic’s website.

As set forth in the Audit Committee Charter, management of Sonic is responsible for the preparation, presentation and integrity of Sonic’s financial statements and for the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting. Management and the accounting department are responsible for maintaining Sonic’s accounting and financial reporting principles and internal controls and procedures designed to assure compliance with accounting standards and applicable laws and regulations. The independent auditors are responsible for auditing Sonic’s financial statements and expressing an opinion as to their conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

We have reviewed and discussed with our independent auditors, BT, matters required to be discussed pursuant to Auditing Standard No. 16 (Communications with Audit Committees) as promulgated by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board. We have received from the auditors a formal written statement describing the relationships between the auditor and Sonic that might bear on the auditor's independence consistent with applicable requirements of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board. We have discussed with BT matters relating to its independence, including a review of audit related fees, and considered the compatibility of non-audit services with the auditors' independence.

The members of the Audit Committee are not full-time employees of Sonic and are not performing the functions of auditors or accountants. As such, it is not the duty or responsibility of the Audit Committee or its members to conduct “field work” or other types of auditing or accounting reviews or procedures or to set auditor independence standards. Members of the Committee necessarily rely on the information provided to them by management and the independent accountants. Accordingly, the Audit Committee’s considerations and discussions referred to above do not assure that the audit of Sonic’s financial statements has been carried out in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, that the financial statements are presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles or that Sonic’s auditors are in fact “independent”.

We have reviewed and discussed with management and BT the audited financial statements. We discussed with BT the overall scope and plans of their audit. We met with BT, with and without management present, to discuss results of their examination and the overall quality of Sonic’s financial reporting.

---

1 The material in this report is not “soliciting material”, is not deemed filed with the SEC, and is not to be incorporated by reference in any of our filings under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, whether made before or after the date hereof and irrespective of any general incorporation language in such filing.
Based on the reviews and discussions referred to above and our review of Sonic’s audited financial statements for fiscal 2016, we recommended to the Board that the audited financial statements be included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016, for filing with the SEC effective December 22, 2016.

Respectfully submitted,

AUDIT COMMITTEE
David C. Kleinman, Chair
Mark D. Burish
Brian T. Wiegand

CERTAIN TRANSACTIONS

Frederick H. Kopko, Jr., a director and stockholder of Sonic Foundry, is a partner in McBreen & Kopko. Pursuant to the 1997 Directors' Stock Option Plan, Mr. Kopko has been granted options to purchase 2,000 shares of Common Stock at an exercise price of $37.60 and was granted options to purchase 18,000 shares of Common Stock at exercise prices ranging from $5.50 to $14.83 pursuant to the 2008 Non-Employee Directors Plan. During fiscal 2016, we paid the Chicago law firm of McBreen & Kopko certain compensation for legal services rendered subject to standard billing rates.

Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance

Section 16(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 requires Sonic's officers and directors, and persons who own more than ten percent of the Common Stock, to file reports of ownership and changes in ownership with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Based solely upon a review of Forms 3 and Forms 4 furnished to us pursuant to Rule 16a-3 under the Exchange Act during our most recent fiscal year, to Sonic Foundry's knowledge, all reporting persons complied with all applicable filing requirements of Section 16(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

Code of Ethics

Sonic has adopted a Code of Ethics (as defined in Item 406 of Regulation S-K) that applies to its principal executive, financial and accounting officers. Sonic Foundry will provide a copy of its code of ethics, without charge, to any investor who requests it. Requests should be addressed in writing to Mr. Kenneth Minor, Corporate Secretary, 222 West Washington Ave, Madison, WI 53703.

COMMUNICATIONS WITH THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS

Any stockholder who desires to contact our Board or specific members of our Board may do so electronically by sending an email to the following address: directors@sonicfoundry.com. Alternatively, a stockholder can contact our Board or specific members of our Board by writing to: Secretary, Sonic Foundry Incorporated, 222 West Washington Avenue, Madison, WI 53703.

Each communication received by the Secretary will be promptly forwarded to the specified party following normal business procedures. The communication will not be opened but rather will be delivered unopened to the intended recipient. In the case of communications to the Board or any group or committee of Directors, the Secretary will open the communication and will make sufficient copies of the contents to send to each Director who is a member of the group or committee to which the envelope is addressed.
STOCKHOLDER PROPOSALS FOR 2018 ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS

Requirements for Stockholder Proposals to be Considered for Inclusion in Sonic's Proxy Materials.
Stockholders of Sonic may submit proposals on matters appropriate for stockholder action at meetings of Sonic's stockholders in accordance with Rule 14a-8 promulgated under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. For such proposals to be included in Sonic's proxy materials relating to its 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, all applicable requirements of Rule 14a-8 must be satisfied and such proposals must be received by Sonic no later than the anniversary date of 120 days prior to the date of this proxy statement (September 29, 2017). Such proposals should be delivered to Corporate Secretary, Sonic Foundry, Inc., 222 West Washington Avenue, Madison, Wisconsin 53703.

Requirements for Stockholders Proposals to be Brought Before the Annual Meeting.
Sonic's bylaws provide that, except in the case of proposals made in accordance with Rule 14a-8, for stockholder nominations to the Board of Directors or other proposals to be considered at an annual meeting of stockholders, the stockholder must have given timely notice thereof in writing to the Secretary not less than ninety nor more than one hundred twenty calendar days prior to the anniversary of the date on which Sonic held its immediately preceding annual meeting of stockholders. To be timely for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, a stockholder's notice must be delivered or mailed to and received by Sonic's Secretary at the principal executive offices of Sonic between November 7, 2017 and December 7, 2017. However, in the event that the annual meeting is advanced by more than 30 days or delayed by more than 60 days from March 7, 2018, to be timely, notice by the stockholders must be so received not earlier than the close of business on the 120th day prior to such annual meeting and not later than the close of business on the later of the 90th day prior to such annual meeting or the tenth calendar day following the date on which public announcement of the date of the annual meeting is first made. In no event will the public announcement of an adjournment of an annual meeting of stockholders commence a new time period for the giving of a stockholder's notice as provided above. A stockholder's notice to Sonic's Secretary must set forth the information required by Sonic's bylaws with respect to each matter the stockholder proposes to bring before the annual meeting. In addition, the proxy solicited by the Board of Directors for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders will confer discretionary authority to vote on (i) any proposal presented by a stockholder at that meeting for which Sonic has not been provided with notice on or prior to the anniversary date of 45 days prior to the date of this proxy statement (December 13, 2017) and (ii) any other proposal, if the 2018 proxy statement briefly describes the matter and how management's proxy holders intend to vote on it, and if the stockholder does not comply with the requirements of Rule 14a-4(c)(2) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Notwithstanding the above, all stockholder proposals must comply with the provisions of Sonic’s bylaws.

OTHER MATTERS
The Board of Directors has at this time no knowledge of any matters to be brought before this year's Annual Meeting other than those referred to above. However, if any other matters properly come before this year's Annual Meeting, it is the intention of the persons named in the proxy to vote such proxy in accordance with their judgment on such matters.

GENERAL
A copy of our Annual Report to Stockholders for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016 is being mailed, together with this Proxy Statement, to each stockholder. Additional copies of such Annual Report and of the Notice of Annual Meeting, this Proxy Statement and the accompanying proxy may be obtained from us. We will, upon request, reimburse brokers, banks and other nominees, for costs incurred by them in forwarding proxy material and the Annual Report to beneficial owners of Common Stock. In addition, directors, officers and regular employees of Sonic and its subsidiaries, at no additional compensation, may solicit proxies by telephone, telegram or in person. All expenses in connection with soliciting management proxies for this year's Annual Meeting, including the cost of preparing, assembling and mailing the Notice of Annual Meeting, this Proxy Statement and the accompanying proxy are to be paid by Sonic.
Sonic will provide without charge (except for exhibits) to any record or beneficial owner of its securities, on written request, a copy of Sonic's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016, including the financial statements and schedules thereto. Exhibits to said report, and exhibits to this proxy statement, will be provided upon payment of fees limited to Sonic's reasonable expenses in furnishing such exhibits. Written requests should be directed to Investor Relations, 222 West Washington Avenue, Madison, Wisconsin 53703. We also make available, free of charge, at the “Investor Information” section of our website, our annual report on Form 10-K, our quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, our current reports on Form 8-K, our proxy statement, amendments and exhibits to such reports as soon as practicable after the filing of such reports, exhibits and proxy statements with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

In order to assure the presence of the necessary quorum at this year's Annual Meeting, and to save Sonic the expense of further mailings, please date, sign and mail the enclosed proxy promptly in the envelope provided. No postage is required if mailed within the United States. The signing of a proxy will not prevent a stockholder of record from voting in person at the meeting.

By Order of the Board of Directors,

January 26, 2017
Kenneth A. Minor, Secretary
UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

(Mark One)

☒ ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934
For the fiscal period ended September 30, 2016

OR

☐ TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934
Commission File Number 000-30407

SONIC FOUNDRY, INC.
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

MARYLAND
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization) 39-1783372
(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

222 W. Washington Ave, Madison, WI 53703 (608) 443-1600
(Address of principal executive offices) (Issuer’s telephone number)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act: None

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: Common stock par value $0.01 per share

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Act. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant’s knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§ 232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes ☒ No ☐
Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, or a non-accelerated filer. See definition of “accelerated filer and large accelerated filer” in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

- Large accelerated filer [☐]
- Accelerated filer [☐]
- Non-accelerated filer [☐]
- Smaller reporting company [☑]

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act). Yes [☐] No [☑]

The aggregate market value of the registrant’s common stock held by non-affiliates computed by reference to the price at which the common equity was last sold, or the average bid and asked price of such common equity, as of the last business day of the Registrant’s most recently completed second fiscal quarter was approximately $25,112,000.

The number of shares outstanding of the registrant’s common equity was 4,411,559 as of December 9, 2016.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Portions of the Proxy Statement for the 2017 Annual Meeting of Stockholders are incorporated by reference into Part III. A definitive Proxy Statement pursuant to Regulation 14A will be filed with the Commission no later than January 28, 2017.
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### PART I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item 1</td>
<td>Business</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 1A</td>
<td>Risk Factors</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 1B</td>
<td>Unresolved Staff Comments</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 2</td>
<td>Properties</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 3</td>
<td>Legal Proceedings</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 4</td>
<td>Mine Safety Disclosures</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PART II

| Item 5 | Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity | 31       |
| Item 6 | Selected Consolidated Financial Data                                          | 33       |
| Item 7 | Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations | 34       |
| Item 7A | Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk                   | 42       |
| Item 8 | Consolidated Financial Statements and Supplementary Data:                   | 43       |
|        | Report of Baker Tilly Virchow Krause, LLP, Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm | 44       |
|        | Consolidated Balance Sheets                                                  | 46       |
|        | Consolidated Statements of Operations                                        | 47       |
|        | Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss                                | 48       |
|        | Consolidated Statements of Stockholders’ Equity                              | 49       |
|        | Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows                                        | 50       |
| Item 9 | Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure | 73       |
| Item 9A | Controls and Procedures                                                      | 73       |
| Item 9B | Other Information                                                            | 74       |

### PART III

| Item 10 | Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance                        | 75       |
| Item 11 | Executive Compensation                                                        | 75       |
| Item 12 | Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters | 75       |
| Item 13 | Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence     | 76       |
| Item 14 | Principal Accounting Fees and Services                                        | 76       |
This annual report on Form 10-K (this "Report") contains statements that are considered forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and its rules and regulations (the "Securities Act"), and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and its rules and regulations (the "Exchange Act"). When used in this Report, the words “anticipate”, “expect”, “plan”, “believe”, “seek”, “estimate” and similar expressions are intended to identify such forward-looking statements. These are statements that relate to future periods and include, but are not limited to, statements about the features, benefits and performance of our Rich Media products, our ability to introduce new product offerings and increase revenue from existing products, expected expenses including those related to selling and marketing, product development and general and administrative, our beliefs regarding the health and growth of the market for our products, anticipated increase in our customer base, expansion of our products functionalities, expected revenue levels and sources of revenue, expected impact, if any, of legal proceedings, the adequacy of liquidity and capital resources, and expected growth in business. Forward-looking statements are subject to risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those projected. These risks and uncertainties include, but are not limited to, market acceptance for our products, our ability to attract and retain customers and distribution partners for existing and new products, our ability to control our expenses, our ability to recruit and retain employees, the ability of distribution partners to successfully sell our products, legislation and government regulation, shifts in technology, global and local business conditions, our ability to effectively maintain and update our products and service portfolio, the strength of competitive offerings, the prices being charged by those competitors, and the risks discussed elsewhere herein. These forward-looking statements speak only as of the date hereof. We expressly disclaim any obligation or undertaking to release publicly any updates or revisions to any forward-looking statements contained herein to reflect any change in our expectations with regard thereto or any change in events, conditions or circumstances on which any such statement is based.

PART I

ITEM 1. BUSINESS

Who We Are
Sonic Foundry, Inc. (NASDAQ: SOFO) (the "Company") is the trusted global leader for video capture, management and webcasting solutions in education, business and government. Mediasite transforms communications, training, education and events for more than 4,300 customers in over 65 countries. Sonic Foundry is a leader in Aragon Research’s Globe™ for Video Content Management, winner of Frost & Sullivan’s Global Market Share Leadership Award in Lecture Capture Solutions for seven consecutive years, a leader in Forrester’s Enterprise Video Platforms and Webcasting Wave™ and a challenger in Gartner’s Magic Quadrant™ for enterprise video content management.

Sonic Foundry, Inc. was founded in 1991, incorporated in Wisconsin in March 1994 and merged into a Maryland corporation of the same name in October 1996. Our executive offices are located at 222 West Washington Ave., Madison, Wisconsin 53703 and our telephone number is (608) 443-1600. Our Sonic Foundry International B.V. ("Sonic Foundry International") (formerly Media Mission B.V.) office is located in the Netherlands, and our Mediasite K.K. ("Mediasite KK" or "MSKK") office is located in Japan. Our corporate website is www.sonicfoundry.com. In the “Investors” section of our website we make available, free of charge, our annual report on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and amendments to reports required to be filed pursuant to Sections 13(a) and 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as soon as reasonably practicable after the filing of such reports with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

Challenges We Address
Every organization faces a fundamental need to share information and communicate efficiently. Universities and colleges connect instructors with students to educate and prepare the next generation. Businesses strive for effective communication and collaboration among employees to provide value to customers. Government agencies must keep partners, stakeholders and constituents informed to operate effectively. And yet, communication and e-learning challenges remain, including how to:

- Improve learners’ academic and professional success
- Keep geographically-dispersed audiences and mobile teams connected
- Boost productivity and overall organizational knowledge
- Reduce logistical and financial impacts of day-to-day communications
Sonic Foundry Solutions
Sonic Foundry transforms the way organizations share and use information with these video solutions:

Mediasite Video Platform
Mediasite Video Platform is a scalable on-premises solution to publish, stream, manage, search and analyze all video. With Mediasite Video Platform, enterprises and education institutions:

- **Stream live and on-demand** video to any device
- **Create an enterprise or campus YouTube** with Mediasite Showcase
- **Automatically publish** video to their learning management system (LMS), content management system (CMS), training portal or any website
- **Deepen engagement** and improve learning with polls, ask-a-question, surveys and other interactive tools
- **Search everything** with fully indexed audio, video and slide content
- **Monitor who is watching** what videos when to measure learner engagement and outcomes
- **Centrally manage** and secure any video

Mediasite Video Cloud
Mediasite Video Cloud is a secure, reliable SaaS (Software as a Service) solution offering the same capabilities as Mediasite Video Platform to publish, stream, manage, search and analyze all video. Customers conveniently host and manage all of their content with Mediasite Video Cloud, or use as needed for large events to divert heavy viewing traffic from their on-premises Mediasite Video Platform. Our co-located and high availability data center and experienced team successfully manage customers’ cloud-based video streaming in secure, fault-tolerant environment.

Mediasite Capture Solutions
Valuable knowledge and expertise is shared every minute, but what’s the best way to capture that knowledge before it evaporates into thin air? Mediasite provides flexible options to record and upload any video-based content from anywhere.

- **My Mediasite:** My Mediasite makes it a snap for instructors, employees and students to create great looking videos, screencasts and slideshows from their computers or mobile devices. From demos and video training to flipped classes, lectures and assignments, everything to record, upload, manage and publish personal videos is in one simple-to-use tool, requiring no pro video skills.
- **Mediasite RL Recorders:** The RL Series of built-in room appliances uses schedule-based capture and advanced audio/video integration to fully automate video and content recording in lecture halls, training rooms, simulation labs and auditoriums. Instructors and speakers teach and present as they are most comfortable, free from technology worries and confident that everything they say and show is captured.
- **Mediasite Catch:** Our latest video capture solution, Mediasite Catch, provides a scalable, economical solution to extend video capture to any classrooms on campus, even if they’re not equipped with extensive audio/video capabilities. Combining the reliability of Mediasite’s recorder-based scheduling automation with the affordability and simplicity of podium-based software, Mediasite Catch provides faculty a worry-free classroom recording experience.
- **Mediasite ML Recorders:** Anyone can be a video producer with the ML Series of portable recording solutions to capture and stream broadcast-quality video. Designed for on-the-go webcasting, hybrid events, guest speakers and conferences, Mediasite ML’s lightweight design moves easily from location to location and can be set up and ready to record in only a few minutes.
- **Mediasite Join:** Real-time video is how today’s best teams, businesses and schools collaborate, exchange ideas and get things done. But too often great ideas, subject matter expertise and important details are forgotten or left behind when a video call ends. Mediasite Join automatically records video and web conferences, transforming them into valuable, searchable video on demand. As a cloud service, it’s the easiest way to capture and preserve any video call or meeting.

Mediasite Events
Mediasite Events is a leading global provider of live and on-demand webcasting services for conferences, hybrid events and high-profile broadcasts, supplying turnkey streaming solutions for hundreds of events each year. Fortune 500 companies, universities,
associations, sporting events and charitable organizations use Mediasite Events to produce high-quality online event experiences. With Mediasite Events, customers:

- Expand their audience reach by streaming to those that cannot attend in person
- Maximize event ROI by generating additional revenue streams from video recordings
- Differentiate themselves from competing events
- Bolster training and communication effectiveness with interactive video and audience engagement tools
- Build stronger teams and deepen morale
- Save travel time and money
- Improve retention and learning outcomes

**Mediasite Services**

Organizations maximize their return on video with these additional Mediasite Services:

- **Advanced Integration Services:** The value of Mediasite grows when customers’ video assets and streaming workflows seamlessly integrate with the systems that drive their online learning, training or communication strategies. Mediasite Advanced Integration Services provides the resources and expertise to incorporate Mediasite video creation, management and delivery processes into existing or planned application platforms, infrastructures and workflows. Leveraging Mediasite’s open architecture and application programming interfaces (APIs), Sonic Foundry developers collaborate with customers to scope, design and implement a Mediasite solution tailored to their unique requirements.

- **Installation Services:** Sonic Foundry provides on-site consulting and installation services to help customers optimize deployments and efficiently integrate Mediasite within existing AV and IT infrastructures, processes and workflows.

- **Training Services:** Expert Sonic Foundry trainers provide the necessary knowledge transfer so organizations feel confident in using, managing and leveraging Mediasite’s capabilities. On-site training is customized to specific requirements and skill levels, while online training provides convenient anytime access to a web-based catalog of training modules.

**Mediasite Customer Assurance**

Standard and Premium Customer Assurance plans give customers peace of mind knowing that they have access to expert technical skills at the level they need.

With a Mediasite Standard Customer Assurance plan, customers are entitled to:

- Software upgrades and updates for Mediasite Video Platform and Mediasite Capture Solutions
- Unlimited technical support assistance
- Mediasite Recorder hardware warranty extension
- Advanced Mediasite Recorder replacement
- Authorized access to the Mediasite Customer Assurance Portal for 24/7 case management, software downloads, documentation, the Mediasite Knowledge Base and other technical resources
- Authorized access to the Mediasite Community for online training videos, customer-exclusive webcasts, peer-to-peer best practice sharing and more

Premium Customer Assurance clients receive the most comprehensive access to Sonic Foundry’s world-class technical expertise by selecting the services that are of greatest value to their organization. A customized Premium Plan includes everything in the Standard Plan, plus any combination of these services:

- Mediasite Monitoring Service with near real time monitoring of all Mediasite assets, proactive incident notification and Sonic Foundry support response for critical issues, exceptions and anticipated issues that may impact day-to-day Mediasite operations
- Priority technical support with queue bypass and support case escalation
- Proactive Mediasite version administration and management
- On-site provisioning of Mediasite Recorders to be used in the event of a hardware failure
- Quarterly Mediasite roadmap discussions with Sonic Foundry’s executive team
Nearly all of our customers purchase a Customer Assurance plan when they purchase Mediasite Video Platform or Mediasite Capture Solutions.

Annual service contracts for Mediasite Video Cloud, include a Standard Customer Assurance plan.

What Sets Mediasite Apart?
For enterprises to maximize their return on video, it takes more than capturing, storing and streaming content. The true impact and power of video is realized when content is transformed into highly interactive learning experiences rich with searchable metadata and detailed viewing statistics. Mediasite provides:

• **Complete platform addressing the entire video lifecycle** - From content creation and delivery to retention and management. Mediasite’s portfolio of video solutions provides customers maximum flexibility and scalability to develop a comprehensive enterprise video strategy.

• **Interactive, consistent playback experiences across devices** - Mediasite involves the viewer in their online video experience with polls, bookmarks, sharing, ask-a-question, resource links and more. Plus, Mediasite’s consistent playback experience across all devices significantly reduces learning curves and accelerates adoption and content mastery.

• **Auto-indexing and powerful video search** - As a video search pioneer for over a decade, we have substantial experience in search precision. Mediasite SmartSearch automatically makes all videos as searchable as text, so keywords can be found anywhere - in audio, slides, handwriting, video or tags.

• **Deep viewership analytics** - Mediasite’s powerful video analytics and built-in reports show exactly who is watching what and when. It’s the deep insight users need to understand viewing behaviors and engagement, to measure video’s impact and value and make informed decisions.

• **Unmatched support network** - Sonic Foundry and the growing Mediasite Community provide a reliable, collaborative support network for all Mediasite customers. Our worldwide network of field-based system engineers and responsive customer care ensure that customers have resources committed to their success. Plus, with nearly 2,000 active customers, the Mediasite Community is one of the most vibrant and growing user communities for video, webcasting, lecture capture and e-learning. Members share ideas and get feedback year-round from community experts through a private online portal, customer-exclusive webcasts and unrivaled networking and learning opportunities at Unleash, the global Mediasite User Conference and other regional customer events.

**Sonic Foundry Solutions in Higher Education:**
Among post-secondary institutions, Mediasite is used for all academic and campus environments, including:

• Lecture capture
• Flipped classroom instruction: students view lectures from home and use classroom time for discussion
• Blended, hybrid and distance learning
• Continuing education
• Campus YouTube
• Special events: commencement, guest speakers, sporting events, etc.
• Faculty training and development
• Student video projects
• Recruitment and admissions
• University business: leadership meetings, alumni relations, outreach

Higher education institutions consistently report that Mediasite:

• Improves student learning outcomes
• Keeps their institution competitive by supporting higher enrollment and/or tuition without new classrooms
• Empowers faculty with technology supporting new teaching pedagogies both in the classroom and online
• Boosts campus outreach, recruitment efforts and awareness of campus events
• Helps campuses manage, secure and search all campus video
To remain relevant, colleges and universities are striving to differentiate themselves through technical leadership as a means to attract tech-savvy students, while balancing their campus technology improvements with systems that faculty will embrace and adopt. As a result, the education market is restructuring and increasing investments around online learning.

Historically, graduate programs and STEM (science, technology, engineering and math)-oriented degree programs in schools of medicine, nursing, engineering or business have comprised the majority of our academic customer base. We are now experiencing heightened market demand for academic video within undergraduate and community college programs as well.

According to the Babson Survey Research Group, Pearson and Online Learning Consortium report, *Online Report Card: Tracking Online Education in the United States* (February 2016), distance education enrollment is rising, with 5.8 million students taking at least one distance course. More than 71% of academic leaders rate the learning outcomes in online education as the same or superior to those in face-to-face instruction. The report states that 35.6% of academic leaders called blended/hybrid outcomes “superior” and somewhat superior in 2015, up from 32.8% in 2014.

Frost & Sullivan analysts report that the academic lecture capture market is “characterized by seismic shifts in the technological demands of students, growing institutional adoption of online programs to increase student enrollment, the increasing use of multi-source video capture to enrich user experience, and deeper in-video metadata schema to improve searchability.” Further, they estimate the lecture capture market is expected to grow at a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 20.6% from 2015 to 2022. (*Global Lecture Capture Analysis report, 2016*).

The visible integration of video-based learning into core university applications like learning management systems (LMSes) and the success of bundled online learning technology solutions are two healthy indicators for the widespread adoption of campus video. LMSes like Canvas by Instructure, Brightspace™, Blackboard®, Moodle and Sakai are ubiquitous in the education enterprise. As the foundation for e-learning, these systems are rapidly evolving to be students’ single-source portal for all course-related materials including recorded lecture and assignment videos. Mediasite’s packaged LMS integrations and support for the Learning Tools Interoperability (LTI) standard, address the need to make learning content accessible to students when and where they need it. Similarly, video management platforms are emerging as repositories for campus’ media-centric content. These platforms provide additional opportunities through which to make Mediasite content accessible to faculty, staff and students.

**Sonic Foundry Solutions in the Enterprise:**
Executives, event planners and line-of-business managers for human resources, talent development, sales, marketing, and customer service are pushing for more video in their organizations to improve communication, collaboration and results.

Mediasite has numerous applications within medium to large corporate, healthcare and government enterprises:

In corporate enterprises it is used for:
- Executive communications: town hall meetings, all-hands meetings
- Workforce development: onboarding and training, HR communications, policy documentation
- Secure corporate YouTube
- Sales, marketing and customer support
- Investor relations: earnings calls, analyst briefings, annual reports
- Conferences and events: user group, sales and annual meetings
In health-related enterprises it is used for:
• Continuing medical education, medical conferences and seminars
• Grand rounds, simulations and procedural training
• Pharmaceutical and new product education Caregiver and patient education
• Emergency response coordination and public health announcements
• Research and collaboration

In government agencies it is used for:
• Training and compliance
• Inter- and intra-agency communications
• Legislative proceedings
• Constituent outreach, committee meetings, public safety announcements
• Relief work, military coordination, emergency preparedness

Through interviews across these verticals, enterprise customers report that Mediasite:
• Expands training and communications opportunities
• Cuts travel and meeting expenses
• Boosts efficiency by allowing participants to watch when it’s convenient to avoid interruptions and increase retention
• Helps build stronger teams through direct management and employee communications

Aragon Research reports that rich media assets that are produced in marketing webinars, webcasts, training, sales communications and other interactions are growing at explosive rates. In its March 2014 research note, Manage Interactive Content with Video Content Management, the firm predicts that “by 2016, interactive presentations and video documents will be accepted formats for basic knowledge transfer,” and “by year-end 2018, video documents will replace text documents as the leading form of digital content.”

Future Direction
Video management, webcasting and lecture capture are becoming an everyday part of the way people work and learn. We strive to shorten the time it takes to not only capture and distribute information but to also transform video into more interactive, discoverable content with rich management, search and analytics capabilities. As a company, we are helping create and manage the video libraries of tomorrow. Our ongoing innovations focus on supporting this vision by:
• Advancing enterprise video content management to accommodate organizations’ existing digital video assets, content generated from third-party video sources and the corresponding metadata associated with those video assets.
• Introducing new applications to easily publish, search and retrieve videos from a video library as well as expanding and automating Mediasite’s powerful multi-modal search capabilities.
• Offering the industry’s widest variety of content capture solutions capable of scaling economically across entire organizations and allowing anyone, on any device, to capture and share their knowledge or expertise.
• Delivering content capture solutions that test the limits of recording, synchronizing and playing back multiple high definition video sources.
• Supporting consistent, interactive content playback experiences across all viewing devices.
• Deepening integration with core enterprise platforms including collaborative platforms like video and web conferencing, learning and course management systems (LMS/CMS), content management systems and student information systems (SIS).
• Introducing market-driven innovations to our Mediasite Video Cloud offering.

Segment Information

We have determined that in accordance with the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) 280-10, Segment Reporting, we operate in three operating segments, however these segments meet the criteria for aggregation for reporting purposes as one reporting segment as of September 30, 2016.
Billings and Distribution

Our services are typically billed and collected in advance of providing the service which requires minimal cost to perform in the future. Billings, which are a non-GAAP measure, are a better indicator of customer activity and cash flow than revenue is, in management’s opinion, and is therefore used by management as a key operational indicator. Billings is computed by combining revenue with the change in unearned revenue.

Our largest individual customers are typically value added resellers (“VARs”) and distributors since the majority of our end users require additional complementary products and services which we do not provide. Accordingly, in fiscal 2016 and 2015 one master distributor, Synnex Corporation (“Synnex”), contributed 14 percent and 10 percent, respectively, of total world-wide billings. A second master distributor, Starin Marketing, Inc. (“Starin”), contributed 13 percent and 12 percent of total world-wide billings in fiscal 2016 and 2015, respectively. As master distributors, Synnex and Starin fulfill transactions to VARs, end users and other distributors. No other customer represented over 10 percent of billings in 2016 or 2015.

Sales

We sell and market our offerings through a sales force that manages a channel of value-added resellers, system integrators, consultants and distributors. These third party representatives specialize in understanding both audio/video systems and IT networking. In fiscal 2016, we utilized three master distributors in the U.S. and approximately 225 resellers, and sold our products to over 1,375 total end users. Our focus has been primarily in the United States and primarily to customers we have identified as having the greatest potential for high use; that is, organizations with presenters, trainers, lecturers, marketers, event planners and leaders who have a routine need to communicate to many people in higher education, government, health and certain corporate markets. Despite our historical attention on the United States market, reseller, customer interest and sales outside the United States has grown and accordingly, we made two international acquisitions in fiscal 2014 in the Netherlands and Japan, significantly increasing our international headcount in sales, operations, technical and administrative positions. To date, we have sold our products to customers in over 65 countries outside the United States. Total non-GAAP billings for Mediasite product and support outside the United States totaled 38 percent and 41 percent in fiscal 2016 and 2015, respectively.

Market expansion: Over half our revenue is realized from the education market. Recent trends including the economic recovery are driving more students, particularly adult learners, to seek online education options. Similarly, demand for lecture capture within undergraduate, community college and blended learning programs is demonstrating growth. This development represents an emerging trend beyond the traditional academic customer base for the company, which has primarily consisted of post-graduate, distance learning and technical degree programs.

For our higher education as well as corporate, government and association clients, we anticipate economic conditions will expand market demand for more outsourced services versus licensed sales. Over the last two years, the company has made extensive capital and technology investments to advance its services model with turnkey event webcasting, a comprehensive cloud-based Software as a Service (SaaS) datacenter, and e-commerce capabilities that position us well to deliver more diversified business services.

With Mediasite Events, we continue to see growing demand for conference webcasting and hybrid events (conferences which combine both face-to-face meeting and viewing over the web). These event-based communication, education and training applications, combined with outsourced webcasting services, are expected to drive the company’s corporate sales activities going forward.

Repeat orders: Many customers initially purchase a small number of Mediasite Recorders to test or pilot in a department, school or business unit. A successful pilot project and the associated increase in webcasting demand from other departments or schools
leads to follow up, multiple Recorder orders as well as increased Mediasite Video Platform or Mediasite Video Cloud capacity. In fiscal 2016, 90 percent of billings were to preexisting customers compared to 83 percent of billings in fiscal 2015.

**Renewals:** As is typical in the industry, we offer annual support and maintenance service contract extensions for a fee to our customer base. Nearly all customers purchase a Customer Assurance plan with their initial Mediasite Recorders and Mediasite Video Platform, and the majority renew their contracts annually.

**Marketing**

In the enterprise, our marketing strategy is based on a cross-industry approach with programs targeting a blend of IT and line of business decision makers responsible for video initiatives in corporate communications, training and development, live webcasting and/or corporate events. The addition of Mediasite Join to our family of enterprise video solutions boosts demand generation marketing to specifically target use cases for streaming and managing the rapidly growing amount of unified communication and collaboration (UCC)-generated video. The medical/healthcare, pharmaceutical and technology segments are particularly strong enterprise markets for us.

Across higher education institutions, Mediasite maintains its market leadership position for scalable and affordable lecture capture and video management. Our marketing focuses on professional schools of business, academic health, law and engineering. Mediasite Join provides new demand generation opportunities as UCC technologies are the basis of many distance learning programs.

Spanning both education and enterprise are marketing programs targeting continuing education. Across these two macro markets we maintain a balanced blend of new demand generation and customer nurturing, to drive Mediasite expansion and add-on business in existing accounts.

Our integrated marketing strategy leverages:

- Customer success stories regularly shared through our best practices webinar series, Enterprise Video Awards program, speaking placements at industry events, email marketing, industry guest columns and blog
- Thought leadership content created and curated from customer successes, Sonic Foundry subject matter experts (SMEs) and industry experts in the form of ebooks, whitepapers, videos, best practice toolkits and more
- The Mediasite Community, a vibrant online community of 2000+ users and its companion community events including the global Mediasite User Conference, Unleash; Mediasite Summits in Europe and Australia/New Zealand; and year-round regional chapter meetings

Sonic Foundry also has field sales/support offices in Europe, Japan and China to deliver its marketing message and execute region-specific marketing programs.

**Operations**

We contract with a third party to build the hardware for our Mediasite Recorders and purchase quantities sufficient to fill specific customer orders, including purchases of inventory by resellers. Quantities are maintained in inventory by the third party provider and shipped directly to the end customer or reseller. The hardware manufacturer provides a limited one-year warranty on the hardware, which we pass on to our customers who purchase a Mediasite Customer Assurance support and maintenance plan. We believe there are alternative sources of manufacturing for our recorders and believe there are numerous additional sources and alternatives to the existing production process. We have experienced delays in production of our products and component parts used in our products in the past and expect to continue to maintain excess quantities of inventory in the future to mitigate the risk of such delays. To date, we have not experienced any material returns due to product defects.
OTHER INFORMATION

Competition

Various vendors provide lecture capture, enterprise webcasting or video content management capabilities, but few offer an end-to-end solution that addresses all phases of the video content lifecycle (capture, delivery, transformation and management) in a single platform like Mediasite.

Lecture capture solutions designed specifically for higher education differ in their technology approach.

- Appliance- or room-based lecture capture provides a fully integrated system with complete recording automation for live or on-demand content. The automated, pre-scheduled workflow results in the greatest faculty and staff adoption and largest volumes of recorded content in the shortest amount of time.
- Software-based lecture capture that resides on a podium or computer in the classroom also captures and publishes rich media content, but relies on campus- or user-supplied hardware.
- Desktop capture tools reside on individual users’ laptops or computers allowing them to record user-generated content.

Few lecture capture vendors, offer a mix of all lecture capture approaches to best suit customers’ needs. Most vendors, including Crestron, Panopto and Tegrity, support only one approach to lecture capture. Likewise, a very small number of vendors provide an integrated platform like Mediasite to archive and manage video and rich media recorded with their solution. Most rely on a third-party platform, typically the institution’s learning or course management system, to publish, search and secure content.

Enterprise video management solutions (e.g. Kaltura, Qumu) serve as centralized media repositories that facilitate the delivery, publishing and management of on-demand video. Unlike Mediasite, most platforms do not include a video capture, webcasting or live streaming component, but instead ingest or import video-based content captured by other third-party devices or solutions. Also, most other platforms focus on ingesting video-only content rather than rich video which combines multiple synchronous video and/or slide streams into an interactive media experience.

Some current and potential customers develop their own home-grown lecture capture, webcasting or video content solutions which may also compete with Mediasite. However, we often find many of these organizations are now looking for a commercial solution that offers comprehensive management capabilities, requires fewer resources and internal maintenance and delivers a less cumbersome workflow.

Intellectual Property

The status of United States patent protection in the Internet industry is not well defined and will evolve as the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office grants additional patents. Currently three U.S patents have been issued to us and we may seek additional patents in the future. We do not know if any future patent application will result in any patents being issued with the scope of the claims we seek, if such patents are issued at all. We do not know whether our patents which have been issued or any patents we may receive in the future will be challenged, invalidated or be of any value. It is difficult to monitor unauthorized use of technology, particularly in foreign countries where the laws may not protect our proprietary rights as fully as in the United States, and our competitors may independently develop technology similar to ours. We will continue to seek patent and other intellectual property protections, when appropriate, for those aspects of our technology that we believe constitute innovations providing significant competitive advantages. Any future, patent applications may not result in the issuance of valid patents.

Our success depends in part upon our rights to proprietary technology. We rely on a combination of copyright, trade secret, trademark and contractual protection to establish and protect our proprietary rights. We have registered three U.S. and four foreign country trademarks. We require our employees to enter into confidentiality and nondisclosure agreements upon commencement of employment. Before we will disclose any confidential aspects of our services, technology or business plans
to customers, potential business distribution partners and other non-employees, we routinely require such persons to enter into confidentiality and nondisclosure agreements. In addition, we require all employees, and those consultants involved in the deployment of our services, to agree to assign to us any proprietary information, inventions or other intellectual property they generate, or come to possess, while employed by us. Despite our efforts to protect our proprietary rights, unauthorized parties may attempt to copy or otherwise obtain and use our services or technology. These precautions may not prevent misappropriation or infringement of our intellectual property.

Third parties may infringe or misappropriate our copyrights, trademarks and similar proprietary rights. In addition, we may be subject to claims of alleged infringement of patents and other intellectual property rights of third parties or may be required to defend against alleged infringement claims filed against our customers due to indemnification agreements. We may be unaware of filed patent applications which have not yet been made public and which relate to our services.

Intellectual property claims may be asserted against us in the future. Intellectual property litigation is expensive and time-consuming and could divert management’s attention away from running our business. Intellectual property litigation could also require us to develop non-infringing technology or enter into royalty or license agreements. These royalty or license agreements, if required, may not be available on acceptable terms, if at all. Our failure or inability to develop non-infringing technology or license the proprietary rights on a timely basis would harm our business.

Research and Development

We believe that our future success will depend in part on our ability to continue to develop new business, and to enhance our existing business. Accordingly, we invest a significant amount of our resources in research and development activities. During the fiscal years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, we spent $6.8 million and $6.3 million, respectively, on internal research and development activities in our business. These amounts represent 18% and 17%, respectively, of total revenue in each of those years. The increase reflects our decision to accelerate development on identified new products as well as enhancements to existing products.

Global Expansion

We acquired Sonic Foundry International in the Netherlands and Mediasite KK in Japan in fiscal 2014. With these acquisitions, we significantly expanded our global market reach in the Asia-Pacific Region and Europe, and accelerate our commitment to enterprise video communication world-wide.

Employees

At September 30, 2016 and 2015, we had 205 and 202 full-time employees, respectively. Our employees are not represented by a labor union, nor are they subject to a collective bargaining agreement. We have never experienced a work stoppage and believe that our employee relations are satisfactory.
ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

YOU SHOULD CAREFULLY CONSIDER THE RISKS DESCRIBED BELOW BEFORE MAKING AN INVESTMENT DECISION. THE RISKS DESCRIBED BELOW ARE NOT THE ONLY ONES WE FACE. ADDITIONAL RISKS THAT WE ARE NOT PRESENTLY AWARE OF OR THAT WE CURRENTLY BELIEVE ARE IMMATERIAL MAY ALSO IMPAIR OUR BUSINESS OPERATIONS. OUR BUSINESS COULD BE HARMED BY ANY OR ALL OF THESE RISKS. THE TRADING PRICE OF OUR COMMON STOCK COULD DECLINE SIGNIFICANTLY DUE TO ANY OF THESE RISKS, AND YOU MAY LOSE ALL OR PART OF YOUR INVESTMENT. IN ASSESSING THESE RISKS, YOU SHOULD ALSO REFER TO THE OTHER INFORMATION CONTAINED OR INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE IN THIS ANNUAL REPORT ON FORM 10-K, INCLUDING OUR CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND RELATED NOTES.

Economic conditions could materially adversely affect the Company.

Fiscal 2016 has continued to show some weakness in domestic markets and global uncertainties exist in many areas of focus for us including the United Kingdom, Japan and the Middle East. Many of our customers rely on local, state or Federal government funding, both domestically and international. Japan experienced a decline in its gross domestic product in 2013, 2014 and 2015. While it appears Japanese government subsidies are again supporting growth in higher education, any future delay or elimination of government programs will have a negative impact on our operations in Japan. Any continuing unfavorable economic conditions could continue to negatively affect, our business, operating results or financial condition, which could in turn affect our stock price. Weak economic conditions and the resulting impact on the availability of public funds along with the possibility of state and local budget cuts and reduced university enrollment could lead to a reduction in demand for our products and services. In addition, a prolonged economic downturn could cause insolvency of key suppliers resulting in product delays, inability of customers to obtain credit to finance purchases of the Company’s products and inability or delay of our channel partners and other customers to pay accounts receivable owed to us.

Economic conditions may have a disproportionate effect on the sale of our products.

Many of our customers will look at the total A/V equipment and labor cost to outfit a typical conference room or lecture hall as one amount for budgetary purposes. Consequently, although our products represent only a portion of the total cost, the cost of the entire project of outfitting a room or conference hall may be considered excessive and may not survive budgetary constraints. Alternatively, our resellers may modify their quotes to end customers by eliminating our products or substituting less expensive products supplied by our competitors in order to win opportunities within budget constraints. Event service partners may similarly suggest that customers eliminate recording and webcasting as a means of reducing event cost. Consequently, declines in spending by government, educational or corporate institutions due to budgetary constraints may have a disproportionate impact on the Company and result in a material adverse impact on our financial condition.

We may need to raise additional capital.

At September 30, 2016, we had cash of $1.8 million, $1.6 million of which was in our foreign operations. There was a remaining amount of $2.3 million available under our line of credit facility with Silicon Valley Bank at September 30, 2016, with $1.6 million outstanding and a credit limit of $3.9 million in total. The Company has historically financed its operations primarily through cash from sales of equity securities, and to a limited extent, cash from operations and through bank credit facilities. The Company has a history of operating losses and while it generated cash from operations of $1.7 million and recorded adjusted Earnings Before Interest, Taxes, Depreciation, and Amortization ("adjusted EBITDA") of $1.0 million in fiscal 2016, the majority of those proceeds went to repayment of debt. Our adjusted EBITDA measure additionally adds back stock compensation expense from the SEC definition of EBITDA. While the Company expects to increase revenue in fiscal 2017 and manage expense growth to a level less than anticipated growth in revenues, we cannot ensure that revenue will grow as anticipated and, if revenue is determined to be growing at a rate less than anticipated, it may be too late to reduce expenses for fiscal 2017. If the funds held
by our foreign subsidiaries are needed for our operations in the United States, the repatriation of some of these funds to the United States could require payment of additional U.S. taxes.

We may evaluate further operating or capital lease opportunities or incur additional term debt to finance equipment purchases or other uses of cash in the future and will utilize the Company’s revolving line of credit to support working capital needs. While the Company anticipates that it will be in compliance with all provisions of our debt facilities, there can be no assurance that the existing debt facilities will be available or that additional financing will be available or on terms acceptable to the Company.

If we borrow money, we may incur significant interest charges, which could harm our profitability. Holders of debt would also have rights, preferences or privileges senior to those of existing holders of our common stock. If we raise additional equity, the terms of such financing may dilute the ownership interests of current investors and cause our stock price to fall significantly. We may not be able to secure financing upon acceptable terms, if at all. If we cannot raise funds on acceptable terms, we may not be able to develop or enhance our products, take advantage of future opportunities or respond to competitive pressures or unanticipated requirements, which could seriously harm our business, operating results, and financial condition. The Company believes its cash position and available credit is adequate to accomplish its business plan through at least the next twelve months.

We have a history of losses.

Our investments in growing revenues have generated losses in most years. Despite our plans to grow revenue to a greater extent than expenses in fiscal 2017 and beyond, we may not realize sufficient revenues to reach or sustain profitability on a quarterly or annual basis. For the year ended September 30, 2016, we had a gross margin of $28.0 million on revenue of $38.0 million with which to cover selling, marketing, product development and general and administrative costs. Our selling, marketing, product development and general and administrative costs have historically been a significant percentage of our revenue, due partly to the expense of developing leads, the relatively long period required to convert leads into sales associated with selling products that are not yet considered “mainstream” technology investments and the cost of developing and maintaining those products. Fluctuations in profitability or failure to maintain profitability have and will likely impact the price of our stock in the future.

Currency exchange rate fluctuations could result in higher costs and decreased margins and earnings.

The functional currency of our foreign subsidiaries in the Netherlands is the Euro and in Japan is the Japanese Yen. They are subject to foreign currency exchange rate risk. The conversion rate of the Yen to the US Dollar rose from 98 at the start of fiscal 2014 when we acquired Mediasite K.K., to approximately 125 in mid fiscal 2015 and now is approximately 104. Similarly, at the beginning of fiscal 2014 when we acquired Sonic Foundry International B.V., the Euro was trading at .79 to the US Dollar, rose to approximately .95 in mid fiscal 2015 and is now at approximately .90 compared to the US Dollar. The strength of the dollar impacted our ability to export profitably to other countries such as those in the European Union and Japan in fiscal 2015 and early 2016, and may return to those levels. Any increase in the exchange rate of the U.S. Dollar compared to the Euro or the Japanese Yen will impact our future operating results and financial position.

Multiple unit deals are needed for continued success.

We need to sell multiple units to educational, corporate and government institutions in order to sell most efficiently and remain profitable. In fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, 90% and 83% of revenue was generated by sales to existing customers, respectively. In particular, sales of multiple units to corporate customers have lagged behind results achieved in the higher education market; consequently, we have allocated more resources to the higher education market. While we have addressed a strategy to leverage existing customers and close multiple unit transactions, a customer may choose not to make expected purchases of our products. The failure of our customers to make expected purchases will harm our business.
Manufacturing disruption or capacity constraints would harm our business.

We subcontract the manufacture of our recorders to one third-party contract manufacturer. Although we believe there are multiple sources of supply from other contract manufacturers as well as multiple suppliers of component parts required by our contract manufacturer, a disruption of supply of component parts or completed products, even if short term, would have a material negative impact on our revenues. Many component parts currently have long delivery lead times or cease production of certain components with limited notice in which to evaluate or obtain alternate supply, requiring conservative estimation of production requirements. Lengthening lead times, product design changes and other third party manufacturing disruptions have caused delays in delivery. In order to compensate for supply delays, we have sourced components from off-shore locations, used cross component parts, paid significantly higher prices or premium fees to expedite delivery for short supply components, and currently hold substantially larger quantities of inventory than in the past. Many of these strategies have increased our costs or require substantial resources to maintain and may not be sufficient to ensure against a product shortage. We depend on our subcontract manufacturer to produce our products efficiently while maintaining high levels of quality. Any manufacturing or component defects, delay in production or changes in product features will likely cause customer dissatisfaction and may harm our reputation. Moreover, any incapacitation of the manufacturing site due to destruction, natural disaster or similar events could result in a loss of product inventory. As a result of any of the foregoing, we may not be able to meet demand for our products, which could negatively affect revenues in the quarter of the disruption or longer depending upon the magnitude of the event, and could harm our reputation.

We could lose revenues if there are changes in the spending policies or budget priorities for government funding of colleges, universities, schools and other education providers.

Most of our customers and potential customers are public colleges, universities, schools and other education providers who depend substantially on government funding. Accordingly, any general decrease, delay or change in federal, state or local funding for colleges, universities, schools and other education providers could cause our current and potential customers to reduce or delay their purchases of our products and services, or to decide not to renew service contracts, either of which could cause us to lose revenues. In addition, a specific reduction in governmental funding support for products such as ours would also cause us to lose revenues. Unfavorable economic conditions may result in further budget cuts and lead to lower overall spending, including information technology spending, by our current and potential clients, which may cause our revenues to decrease.

If a sufficient number of customers do not accept our products, our business may not succeed.

The use of video as a mainstream communication tool and the market for content management software is in an early stage. We cannot predict how the market for our products will develop, and part of our strategic challenge will be to convince enterprise customers of the productivity, improved communications, cost savings, suitability and other benefits of our products. In higher education the decision to include lecture capture technology in the classroom is often influenced by the professor teaching the class, who sometimes views lecture capture technology as a threat to their job. The market for content delivery solutions is very complex, includes many products and solutions that address various aspects of customer needs and as a result it is often difficult for customers and channel partners to understand how our products and services compare. Further, corporate customers may use video as a tool, but may choose to rely upon their own IT infrastructure and resources to manage their video content. Because many companies generally are predisposed to maintaining control of their IT systems and infrastructure, there may be resistance to using software as a service provided by a third party. Our future revenue and revenue growth rates will depend in large part on our success in delivering these products effectively, creating market acceptance for these products and meeting customer’s needs for new or enhanced products. If we fail to do so, our products will not achieve widespread market acceptance, and we may not generate sufficient revenue to offset our product development and selling and marketing costs, which will hurt our business.

We may not be able to innovate to meet the needs of our target market.

Our future success will continue to depend upon our ability to develop new products, product enhancements or service offerings that address future needs of our target markets and to respond to these changing standards and practices. The success of new products, product enhancements or service offerings depend on several factors, including the timely completion, quality and
market acceptance of the product, enhancement or service. Our fiscal 2017 business plan includes an expectation for improved revenue growth from our corporate segment associated with the impact of new products and enhancements to existing products that better meet the needs of many corporations and their interest in comprehensive solutions. There can be no assurance that we will be successful in achieving our expected growth in the corporate market. Our revenue could be reduced if we do not capitalize on our current market leadership by timely development of innovative new products, product enhancements or service offerings that will increase the likelihood that our products and services will be accepted in preference to the products and services of our current and future competitors.

If our marketing and lead generation efforts are not successful, our business will be harmed.

We believe that continued marketing efforts will be critical to achieve widespread acceptance of our products. Our marketing campaigns may not be successful given the expense required. For example, failure to adequately generate and develop sales leads could cause our future revenue growth to decrease. In addition, our inability to generate and cultivate sales leads into large organizations, where there is the potential for significant use of our products, could have a material effect on our business. We may not be able to identify and secure the number of strategic sales leads necessary to help generate marketplace acceptance of our products. If our marketing or lead-generation efforts are not successful, our business and operating results will be harmed.

The length of our sales and deployment cycles are uncertain, which may cause our revenue and operating results to vary significantly from quarter to quarter and year to year.

During our sales cycle, we spend considerable time and expense providing information to prospective customers about the use and benefits of our products without generating corresponding revenue. Our expense levels are relatively fixed in the short-term and based in part on our expectations of future revenue. Therefore, any delay in our sales cycle could cause significant variations in our operating results, particularly because a relatively small number of customer orders represent a large portion of our revenue.

Sales of some of our products have experienced seasonal fluctuations which have affected sequential growth rates for these products, particularly in our first fiscal quarter. For example, there is generally a slowdown for sales of our products in the higher education and corporate markets in the first fiscal quarter of each year. Seasonal fluctuations could negatively affect our business, which could cause our operating results to fall short of anticipated results for such quarters. As such, we believe that quarter-to-
quarter comparisons of our revenues, operating results and cash flows may not be meaningful and should not be relied upon as an indication of future performance.

Our operating results are hard to predict as a significant amount of our sales typically occur at the end of a quarter and the mix of product and service orders may vary significantly.

Revenue for any particular quarter is extremely difficult to predict with any degree of certainty. We typically ship products within a short time after we receive an order and therefore, we do not have an order backlog with which to estimate future revenue. In addition, orders from our channel partners are based on the level of demand from end-user customers. Any decline or uncertainty in end-user demand could negatively impact end-user orders, which could in turn significantly negatively affect orders from our channel partners in any given quarter. Accordingly, our expectations for both short and long-term future revenue is based almost exclusively on our own estimate of future demand based on the pipeline of sales opportunities we manage, rather than on firm channel partner orders. Our expense and inventory levels are based largely on these estimates. In addition, our events business is particularly unpredictable and subject to variation due to the short time-frame between when we learn of an opportunity and when the event occurs. Further, the majority of our product orders are received in the last month of a quarter; thus, the unpredictability of the receipt of these orders could negatively impact our future results. We historically have received all or nearly all of our channel partner orders in the last month of a quarter and often in the last few days of the quarter. Accordingly, any significant shortfall in demand for our products or services in relation to our expectations, even if the result was a short term delay in orders, would have an adverse impact on our operating results.

We have experienced growing demand for our hosting and event services as well as a growing preference from our customers in purchasing our annually licensed software. As a result, we have seen an increase in service billings and recurring revenue as a percentage of total billings. We expect this trend to continue which we expect to improve predictability of revenue and gross margins but will delay the impact on revenue of any increase or decrease in billings during any particular quarter. We subcontract for some services required by our events customers, such as onsite management labor and closed captioning. We typically charge for such services at a lower margin than other services. The percentage of billings represented by services, provided either directly or indirectly, is also likely to fluctuate from quarter to quarter due to seasonality of event services and other factors. Since content hosting and support services are typically billed in advance of providing the service, revenue is initially deferred, leading to reduced current period revenue with a corresponding negative impact to profits or losses in periods of significant increase in the percentage of our billings for deferred services.

The market price of our common stock may be subject to volatility

The trading prices of the securities of technology companies have been highly volatile. Factors affecting the market price of our common stock include:

- Variations in our operating results, earnings per share, cash flows from operating activities, deferred revenue and other financial metrics and non-financial metrics, and how those results compare to investor expectations;
- Our announcement of actual results for a fiscal period that are higher or lower than expected results or our announcement of revenue or earnings guidance that is higher or lower than expected, including as a result of difficulty forecasting seasonal variations in our financial condition and operating results;
- Changes in the estimates of our operating results or changes in recommendations by securities analysts that elect to follow our common stock;
- Announcements of technological innovations, new services or service enhancements, strategic alliances or significant agreements by us or by our competitors;
- Announcements by us or by our competitors of mergers or other strategic acquisitions, or rumors of such transactions involving us or our competitors;
- Announcements of customer additions and customer cancellations or delays in customer purchases;
- Recruitment or departure of key personnel;
• Disruptions in our service due to computer hardware, software, network or data center problems;
• The economy as a whole, market conditions in our industry and the industries of our customers;
• The issuance of shares of common stock by us, whether in connection with an acquisition or a capital raising transaction;
• Low trading volumes of our shares and inconsistent trading activity;
• Issuance of debt and other convertible securities; and
• Any other factors discussed herein.

In addition, if the market for technology stocks or the stock market in general experiences uneven investor confidence, the market price of our common stock could decline for reasons unrelated to our business, operating results or financial condition. The market price of our common stock might also decline in reaction to events that affect other companies within, or outside, our industry even if these events do not directly affect us.

We are subject to risks associated with our channel partners’ product inventories and product sell-through.

We sell a significant amount of our products to strategic audio video (A/V) distributors such as Synnex Corporation, Starin Marketing, Inc., and Stampede Presentation Products, Inc. as well as other international distributors and channel partners who maintain their own inventory of our products for sale to dealers and end-users. If these channel partners are unable to sell an adequate amount of their inventory of our products in a given quarter to dealers and end-users or if channel partners decide to decrease their inventories for any reason, such as a long-term continuation or increase, in global economic uncertainty and downturn in technology spending, the volume of our sales to these channel partners and our revenue would be negatively affected. In addition, if channel partners decide to purchase more inventory, due to product availability or other reasons, than is required to satisfy end-user demand or if end-user demand does not keep pace with the additional inventory purchases, channel inventory could grow in any particular quarter, which could adversely affect product revenue in the subsequent quarter. In addition, we also face the risk that some of our channel partners have inventory levels in excess of future anticipated sales. If such sales do not occur in the time frame anticipated by these channel partners for any reason, these channel partners may substantially decrease the amount of product they order from us in subsequent periods, which would harm our business.

If stock balancing returns or price adjustments exceed our reserves, our operating results could be adversely affected.

We provide three of our distributors with stock balancing return rights, which generally permit our distributors to return products, subject to ordering an equal dollar amount of alternate products. We also provide price protection rights to these distributors. Price protection rights require that we grant retroactive price adjustments for inventories of our products held by distributors if we lower our prices for those products within a specified time period. To cover our exposure to these product returns and price adjustments, we establish reserves based on our evaluation of historical product trends and current marketing plans. However, we cannot be assured that our reserves will be sufficient to cover our future product returns and price adjustments. If we inadequately forecast reserves, it may compromise our ability to recognize revenue to these distributors at the time of shipment. As a result, we would not be able to recognize revenue until these three distributors sell the inventory to the final end user, which would have a material adverse effect on revenues in the period covered by that change.

We depend in part on the success of our relationships with third-party resellers and integrators.

Our success depends on various third-party relationships, particularly in our non-higher education business, with certain international geographies and our events services operations. The relationships include third party resellers as well as system integrators that assist with implementations of our products and sourcing of our products and services. Identifying partners, negotiating and documenting relationships with them and maintaining their relationships require significant time and resources from us. In addition, our agreements with our resellers and integrators are typically non-exclusive and do not prohibit them from working with our competitors or from offering competing products or services. We have limited control, if any, as to whether these strategic partners devote adequate resources to promoting, selling and implementing our products as compared to our competitor’s products. Our competitors may be effective in providing incentives to third parties to favor their products or services.
If we are unsuccessful in establishing or maintaining our relationships with these third parties, our ability to compete in the marketplace or to maintain or grow our revenue could be impaired and our operating results would suffer.

Our cash flow could fluctuate due to the potential difficulty of collecting our receivables.

A significant portion of our sales are fulfilled by VARs, regional distributors or master distributors. As an example, 28% of our billings in fiscal 2016 were to Synnex Corporation, Starin Marketing Inc., and Stampede Presentation Products, Inc., three master distributors who fulfill demand from other distributors, VARs or end-users. While our VARs typically maintain payment terms consistent with other end-users, our master distributors have longer payment terms and a delay in payment may occur as a result of a number of factors including changes in demand, general economic factors, financial performance, inventory levels or disputes over payments. Any delay from Synnex, Starin, Stampede or other large distributors or VARs, could have a material impact on the collections of our receivables during a particular quarter.

We offer credit terms to some of our international customers; however, payments tend to go beyond terms in certain countries and advances allowable on accounts receivable from international customers under our revolving line of credit are calculated using a lower advance rate than domestic receivables and are limited to $1 million. Therefore, as Europe, Asia and other international regions grow, accounts receivable balances will likely increase as compared to previous years and our ability to finance the increase will be limited.

Supporting our existing and growing customer base and implementing large customer deployments could strain our personnel resources and infrastructure, and if we are unable to scale our operations and increase productivity, customer satisfaction and our business will be harmed.

Frequent enhancements to our software puts pressure on our customers to install, maintain and train their personnel on its use. Further, frequent releases of the software can lead to less product stability. As a result, our customer care and engineering resources have come under, and are expected in the future to come under significant pressure in providing the high-quality of technical support our customers expect during periods of high demand. We may be unable to respond quickly enough to accommodate short-term increases in customer demand for support services. Increased customer demand for these services, without corresponding revenues, could increase costs and adversely affect our operating results. In addition, our sales process is highly dependent on our applications and business reputation and on positive recommendations from our existing customers. Any failure to maintain high-quality technical support, or a market perception that we do not maintain high-quality support, could adversely affect our reputation, our ability to sell our products and services to existing and prospective customers, and our business, operating results and financial position.

As we target more of our sales efforts at larger initial transactions, we face increasingly complex deployments requiring substantial technical and management resources, including in some cases significant product customization and integration with other applications or hardware. Customers making large expenditures for our products and services typically have higher expectations of product and service operability and response time if issues arise. Some of these customers have asked us to host their content and have significant amounts of legacy content to transfer to our datacenter. Such increased activity and storage demand on our data centers put additional strain on our personnel and hosting infrastructure. Our hosting customers typically require a high level of access, data security and need to capture and store multiple high definition streams. Such requirements require costly enhancements to our infrastructure. High demand on technical and management resources to manage large transactions distract personnel from existing customers, development of new products and other important activities which could lead to potential customer dissatisfaction, product development delays or other issues associated with the distraction.

If a customer is not satisfied with the quality of work performed by us or a third party or with the type of services or solutions delivered, then we could incur additional costs to address the situation and delay recognition of revenue, the profitability of that work might be impaired, and the customer’s dissatisfaction with our services could damage our ability to obtain additional work
from that customer. In addition, negative publicity related to our customer relationships, regardless of its accuracy, may further damage our business by affecting our ability to compete for new business with current and prospective customers.

**Accounting regulations and related interpretations and policies, particularly those related to revenue recognition, cause us to defer revenue recognition into future periods for all or portions of our products and services.**

Revenue recognition for our products and services is complex and subject to multiple sources of authoritative guidance, some of which are new, as well as varied interpretations and implementation practices for such rules. These rules require us to apply judgment in determining revenue recognition. In certain situations, we may have to defer the entire amount of revenue from a transaction, even when the product has already shipped. This may occur when the customer has delayed payment on the transaction, or in certain other circumstances, such as when we agree to extend payment terms on other invoices from such customer. In addition, we always defer revenue when services are included in a transaction, and not performed. Other factors that are considered in revenue recognition include those such as vendor specific objective evidence (VSOE), best estimate of selling price and the inclusion of other services and contingencies to payment terms. We expect that we will continue to defer portions or, in certain circumstances with respect to a particular customer, all of our product or service billings because of these factors, and to the extent that management’s judgment is incorrect it could result in an increase in the amount of revenue deferred in any one period. The amounts deferred may be significant and may vary from quarter to quarter depending on, among other factors, compliance with payment terms, the mix of products sold, combination of products and services sold together or contractual terms.

Additional changes in authoritative guidance, including the interpretation of "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)", or changes in practice in applying such rules could also cause us to defer the recognition of revenue to future periods or recognize lower revenue.

**Because most of our service contracts are renewable on an annual basis, a reduction in our service renewal rate could significantly reduce our revenues.**

Our clients have no obligation to renew their content hosting agreements, customer support contracts or other annual service contracts after the expiration of the initial period, which is typically one year, and some clients have elected not to do so. A decline in renewal rates could cause our revenues to decline. We have limited historical data with respect to rates of renewals, so we cannot accurately predict future renewal rates. Our renewal rates may decline or fluctuate as a result of a number of factors, including client dissatisfaction with our products and services, our slow response to customer technical inquiries, our failure to update our products to maintain their attractiveness in the market, deteriorating economic conditions or budgetary constraints or changes in budget priorities faced by our clients.

**Because we generally recognize revenues ratably over the term of our service contracts, downturns or upturns in service transactions will not be fully reflected in our operating results until future periods.**

We recognize most of our revenues from service contracts monthly over the terms of their agreements, which are typically 12 months, although terms have ranged from less than one month to 48 months. As a result, much of the service revenue we report in each quarter is attributable to agreements entered into during previous quarters. Consequently, a decline in sales, client renewals or market acceptance of our products in any one quarter will not necessarily be fully reflected in the revenues in that quarter and will negatively affect our revenues and profitability in future quarters. This ratable revenue recognition also makes it difficult for us to rapidly increase our revenues through additional sales in any period, as revenues from new clients must be recognized over the applicable agreement term.
There is a great deal of competition in the market for our products, which could lower the demand for our products and have a negative impact on our operations.

The market for our products and services is intensely competitive, dynamic and subject to rapid technological change. The intensity of the competition and the pace of change are expected to increase in the future. Increased competition is likely to result in price reductions, reduced gross margins and loss of market share, any one of which could seriously harm our business. Competitors vary in size and in the scope and breadth of the products and services offered, many of which have greater financial resources, greater name recognition, more employees and greater financial, technical, marketing, public relations and distribution resources than we have. In addition, new competitors with greater financial resources may arise through partnerships, distribution agreements, mergers, acquisitions or other types of transactions at any time. In particular, large companies have begun to make investments in and/or partner with smaller companies to enter the lecture capture and video management markets.

Various vendors provide lecture capture, enterprise webcasting or video content management capabilities, but few offer an end-to-end solution that addresses all phases of the video content lifecycle (capture, delivery, transformation and management) in a single platform like Mediasite.

**Lecture capture solutions** designed specifically for higher education differ in their technology approach.

- Appliance- or room-based lecture capture provides a fully integrated system with complete recording automation for live or on-demand content. The automated, pre-scheduled workflow results in the greatest faculty and staff adoption and largest volumes of recorded content in the shortest amount of time.
- Software-based lecture capture that resides on a podium or computer in the classroom also captures and publishes rich media content, but relies on campus- or user-supplied hardware.
- Desktop capture tools reside on individual users’ laptops or computers allowing them to record user-generated content.

Few lecture capture vendors, offer a mix of all lecture capture approaches to best suit customers’ needs. Most vendors, including Crestron, Panopto and Tegrity, support only one approach to lecture capture. Likewise, a very small number of vendors provide an integrated platform like Mediasite to archive and manage video and rich media recorded with their solution. Most rely on a third-party platform, typically the institution’s learning or course management system, to publish, search and secure content.

**Enterprise video management solutions** (e.g. Kaltura, Qumu) serve as centralized media repositories that facilitate the delivery, publishing and management of on-demand video. Unlike Mediasite, most platforms do not include a video capture, webcasting or live streaming component, but instead ingest or import video-based content captured by other third-party devices or solutions. Also, most other platforms focus on ingesting video-only content rather than rich video which combines multiple synchronous video and/or slide streams into an interactive media experience.

Some current and potential customers develop their own home-grown lecture capture, webcasting or video content solutions which may also compete with Mediasite. However, we often find many of these organizations are now looking for a commercial solution that offers comprehensive management capabilities, requires fewer resources and internal maintenance and delivers a less cumbersome workflow.

The competitive environment may require us to make changes in our products, pricing, licensing, services, or marketing to maintain and extend our current technology. Price concessions or the emergence of other pricing, licensing, and distribution strategies or technology solutions of competitors may reduce our revenue, margins or market share. Other changes we have to make in response to competition could cause us to expend significant financial and other resources, disrupt our operations, strain relationships with partners, release products and enhancements before they are thoroughly tested or result in customer dissatisfaction, any of which could harm our operating results and stock price.
Our business is susceptible to risks associated with international operations.

International product and service billings ranged from 38% to 41% of our total billings in each of the past two years and are expected to continue to account for a significant portion of our business in the future, particularly as a result of growth in the operations of businesses acquired in fiscal 2014 in the Netherlands and Japan. International sales are subject to a variety of risks, including:

- Difficulties in establishing and managing international subsidiaries, distribution channels and operations;
- Difficulties in selling, servicing and supporting overseas products, translating products into foreign languages and compliance with local hardware requirements;
- Difficulties in managing the demands of large international deployments, many of which distract key sales personnel from opportunities in other parts of the world;
- Challenges associated with management transition;
- Challenges related to language or cultural differences;
- The uncertainty of laws and enforcement in certain countries, such as China, relating to the protection of intellectual property or requirements for product certification, protection of personal data or other restrictions;
- Competitive pressure impacting other parts of the world;
- Multiple and possibly overlapping tax structures;
- Currency and exchange rate fluctuations;
- Difficulties in collecting accounts receivable in foreign countries, including complexities in documenting letters of credit;
- Economic or political changes in international markets;
- Restrictions on access to the Internet; and
- Difficulty in complying with international employment related requirements

We may need to make acquisitions or form strategic alliances or partnerships in order to remain competitive in our market, and recent acquisitions, strategic alliances or partnerships, including the acquisition of Mediasite KK and Sonic Foundry International, could be difficult to integrate, disrupt our business and dilute stockholder value.

We completed the acquisitions of Mediasite KK in Japan and MediaMission (now Sonic Foundry International) in the Netherlands in fiscal 2014. As a result of these acquisitions, we are integrating products, services, dispersed operations, management systems and very different cultures. In the future, we may acquire or form strategic alliances or partnerships with other businesses in order to remain competitive or to acquire new technologies. Acquisitions and investments involve numerous risks, including:

- The potential failure to achieve the expected benefits of the combination or acquisition;
- Difficulties in and the cost of integrating operations, technologies, services and personnel;
- Diversion of financial and managerial resources from existing operations;
- Risk of entering new markets in which we have little or no experience or where competitors may have stronger market positions;
- Potential write-offs of acquired assets or investments, and potential financial and credit risks associated with acquired customers;
- Potential loss of key employees;
- Inability to generate sufficient revenue to offset acquisition or investment costs;
- The inability to maintain relationships with customers and partners of the acquired business;
- The difficulty of transitioning the acquired technology onto our existing platforms and maintaining the security standards consistent with our other services for such technology;
- Potential unknown liabilities associated with the acquired businesses;
- Unanticipated expenses related to acquired technology and its integration into existing technology;
• Negative impact to our results of operations because of the depreciation and amortization of amounts related to acquired intangible assets, fixed assets and deferred compensation, and the loss of acquired deferred revenue and unbilled deferred revenue;
• Delays in customer purchases due to uncertainty related to any acquisition;
• The need to implement controls, procedures and policies at the acquired company;
• Challenges caused by distance, language and cultural differences;
• In the case of foreign acquisitions, the challenges associated with integrating operations across different cultures and languages and currency, technological, employee and other regulatory risks and uncertainties in the economic, social and political conditions associated with specific countries; and
• The tax effects of any such acquisitions.

Our failure to successfully manage the acquisitions of Mediasite KK and Sonic Foundry International, or other future acquisitions, strategic alliances or partnerships could seriously harm our operating results. In addition, our stockholders would be diluted if we finance the future acquisitions, strategic alliances or partnerships by incurring convertible debt or issuing equity securities.

If potential customers or competitors use open source software to develop products that are competitive with our products and services, we may face decreased demand and pressure to reduce the prices for our products.

The growing acceptance and prevalence of open source software may make it easier for competitors or potential competitors to develop software applications that compete with our products, or for customers and potential customers to internally develop software applications that they would otherwise have licensed from us. One of the aspects of open source software is that it can be modified or used to develop new software that competes with proprietary software applications, such as ours. Such competition can develop without the degree of overhead and lead time required by traditional proprietary software companies. As open source offerings become more prevalent, customers may defer or forego purchases of our products, which could reduce our sales and lengthen the sales cycle for our products or result in the loss of current customers to open source solutions. If we are unable to differentiate our products from competitive products based on open source software, demand for our products and services may decline, and we may face pressure to reduce the prices of our products, which would hurt our profitability. If our use of open-source is challenged and construed unfavorably, our operating results could be adversely impacted.

We use open source software in our application suite. Although we monitor our use of open source software closely, the terms of many open source licenses have not been interpreted by United States courts, and there is risk that such licenses could be construed in a manner that imposes unanticipated conditions or restrictions on our ability to commercialize our products. In such event, we could be required to re-engineer our technology or to discontinue offering all or a portion of our products in the event re-engineering cannot be accomplished on a timely basis, any of which could adversely affect our business, operating results and financial condition.

Our customers may use our products to share confidential and sensitive information, and if our system security is breached, our reputation could be harmed and we may lose customers.

Our customers may use our products and services to share confidential and sensitive information, the security of which is critical to their business. Third parties may attempt to breach our security for customer hosted content or the networks of our customers. Malicious third-parties may also conduct attacks designed to temporarily deny customers access to our services. Customers may take inadequate security precautions with their sensitive information and may inadvertently make that information public. We may be liable to our customers or subject to fines for a breach in security, and any breach could harm our reputation and cause us to lose customers. In addition, customers are vulnerable to computer viruses, physical or electronic break-ins and similar disruptions, which could lead to interruptions, delays or loss of data. We may be required to expend significant capital and other resources to further protect against security breaches or to resolve problems caused by any breach, including litigation-related expenses if we are sued.
Privacy concerns and laws, evolving regulation of cloud computing, cross-border data transfer restrictions and other domestic or foreign regulations may limit the use and adoption of our solutions and adversely affect our business.

Regulation related to the provision of services on the Internet is increasing, as federal, state and foreign governments continue to adopt new laws and regulations addressing data privacy and the collection, processing, storage and use of personal information, including health data. In some cases foreign data privacy laws and regulations, such as the European Union’s Data Protection Directive, and the country-specific regulations that implement that directive, also govern the processing of personal information. While our European customers can confirm our participation in the EU Privacy Shield program as support that we comply with the European Union Directive on the protection of personal data, they may still have concerns about our processing of personal data and may decide not to host content with us. Further, laws are increasingly aimed at the use of personal information for marketing purposes, such as the European Union’s e-Privacy Directive, and the country-specific regulations that implement that directive. Such laws and regulations are subject to differing interpretations and may be inconsistent among jurisdictions. These and other requirements could reduce demand for our solutions, restrict our ability to support our customers, or even offer our services and solutions in certain locations. We expect to acquire software and hardware in fiscal 2017 in order to enhance our ability to defend and to detect intrusions to our network infrastructure. These enhancements will be expensive and require significant staff time to deploy and develop, and there is no assurance that they will be effective.

In addition to government activity, privacy advocacy and other industry groups have established or may establish new self-regulatory standards that may place additional burdens on us. Many of our customers in the European Union face increasingly complex procurement requirements that have delayed some projects and caused us not to be successful in winning other opportunities. If we are unable to maintain these certifications or meet these standards, it could adversely affect our ability to provide our solutions to certain customers and could harm our business.

Our customers and potential customers do business in a variety of industries, including financial services, the public sector, healthcare and telecommunications. Regulators in certain industries have adopted and may in the future adopt regulations or interpretive positions regarding the use of cloud computing and other outsourced services. The costs of compliance with, and other burdens imposed by, industry-specific laws, regulations and interpretive positions may limit customers’ use and adoption of our services and reduce overall demand for our services.

The costs of compliance with and other burdens imposed by laws, regulations and standards may limit the use and adoption of our service and reduce overall demand for it, or lead to significant fines, penalties or liabilities for any noncompliance.

Furthermore, concerns regarding data privacy may cause the users of our customers’ data to resist providing the data necessary to allow our customers to use our service effectively. Even the perception that the privacy of personal information is not satisfactorily protected or does not meet regulatory requirements could inhibit sales of our products or services, and could limit adoption of our cloud-based solutions.

Operational failures in our network infrastructure could disrupt our remote hosting services, cause us to lose clients and sales to potential clients and result in increased expenses and reduced revenues.

Unanticipated problems affecting our network systems could cause interruptions or delays in the delivery of the hosting services we provide to some of our clients. We are not equipped to provide full disaster recovery to all of our hosted clients. If there are operational failures in our network infrastructure that cause interruptions, slower response times, loss of data or extended loss of service for our remotely hosted clients, we may be required to issue credits or pay penalties, current clients may terminate their contracts or elect not to renew them and we may lose sales to potential clients. We have recently acquired additional hardware and systems, expect to make more significant investments in hardware (primarily for storage) and outsourced most aspects of our network infrastructure to three providers. As a result, we are reliant on third parties for network availability so outages may be outside our control and we may need to acquire additional hardware in order to provide an appropriate level of redundancy required by our customers.
We license technology from third parties. If we are unable to maintain these licenses, our operations and financial condition may be negatively impacted.

We license technology from third parties. The loss of, our inability to maintain, or changes in material terms of these licenses could result in increased cost or delayed sales of our software and services, or may cause us to remove features from our products or services. We anticipate that we will continue to license technology from third parties in the future. This technology may not continue to be available on commercially reasonable terms, if at all. Although we do not believe that we are substantially dependent on any individual licensed technology, some of the component technologies that we license from third parties could be difficult for us to replace. The impairment of these third-party relationships, especially if this impairment were to occur in unison, could result in delays in the delivery of our software and services until equivalent technology, if available, is identified, licensed and integrated. This delay could adversely affect our operating results and financial condition.

The technology underlying our products and services is complex and may contain unknown defects that could harm our reputation, result in product liability or decrease market acceptance of our products.

The technology underlying our products is complex and includes software that is internally developed, software licensed from third parties and hardware purchased from third parties. These products have, and will in the future, contain errors or defects, particularly when first introduced or when new versions or enhancements are released. We may not discover defects that affect our current or new applications or enhancements until after they are sold and our insurance coverage may not be sufficient to cover our exposure. Any defects in our products and services could:

- Damage our reputation;
- Cause our customers to initiate product liability suits against us;
- Increase our product development resources;
- Cause customers to cancel orders, ask for partial refunds or potential customers to purchase competitive products or services;
- Delay release or market acceptance of our products, or otherwise adversely impact our relationships with our customers; and
- Cause us to allocate valuable engineering resources to fix our existing products, which may cause us to allocate fewer resources toward developing new products, or toward adding features to our existing products.

If we are viewed only as a commodity supplier, our margins and valuations will shrink.

We need to provide value-added services in order to avoid being viewed as a commodity supplier. This entails building long-term customer relationships and developing features that will distinguish our products. Our technology is complex and is often confused with other products and technologies in the market place, including video conferencing, streaming and collaboration.

We have developed lower cost hardware, software products and cloud solutions to better address that market segment. Such products have more limited features compared to our existing products. While we believe we can preserve the market for our full-featured products due to differentiation between the two and migration to full featured products, release of lower cost products could reduce gross margin and demand for products sold at higher prices. Potential large scale deployments of our products often include the lower cost products we sell, putting greater pressure on gross margin due to expectations for greater volume discounts.

If we fail to build long-term customer relationships and develop features that distinguish our products in the market place, our margins will shrink and our stock may become less valuable to investors.

Our success depends upon the proprietary aspects of our technology.

Our success and ability to compete depend to a significant degree upon the protection of our proprietary technology. We currently have three U.S. patents that have been issued to us. We may seek additional patents in the future. However, it is possible that:
Any patents acquired by or issued to us may not be broad enough to protect us.

Any issued patent could be successfully challenged by one or more third parties, which could result in our loss of the right to prevent others from exploiting the inventions claimed in those patents.

Current and future competitors may independently develop similar technology, duplicate our services or design around any of our patents.

Effective patent protection, including effective legal-enforcement mechanisms against those who violate our patent-related assets, may not be available in every country in which we do or plan to do business.

We may not have the resources to enforce our patents or may determine the potential benefits are not worth the cost and risk of ultimately being unsuccessful.

**We also rely upon trademark, copyright and trade secret laws, which may not be sufficient to protect our intellectual property.**

We also rely on a combination of laws, such as copyright, trademark and trade secret laws, and contractual restrictions, such as confidentiality agreements and licenses, to establish and protect our technology. We have registered three U.S. and four foreign country trademarks. These forms of intellectual property protection are critically important to our ability to establish and maintain our competitive position. However, it is possible that:

- Third parties may infringe or misappropriate our copyrights, trademarks and similar proprietary rights.
- Laws and contractual restrictions may not be sufficient to prevent misappropriation of our technology or to deter others from developing similar technologies, particularly in foreign countries where the laws may not protect our proprietary rights as fully or as readily as United States laws. Our recent growth in activities in China will likely increase this risk.
- There have been attacks on certain patent systems, increasing the likelihood of changes to established laws, including in the United States. We cannot predict the long-term effects of any potential changes, which could be detrimental to our licensing program.
- Effective trademark, copyright and trade secret protection, including effective legal-enforcement mechanisms against those who violate our trademark, copyright or trade secret assets, may be cost prohibitive or unavailable or limited in foreign countries.
- Contractual agreements may not provide meaningful protection for our trade secrets, know-how or other proprietary information in the event of any unauthorized use, misappropriation or disclosure of such trade secrets, know-how or other proprietary information.
- Other companies may claim common law trademark rights based upon state or foreign laws that precede the federal registration of our marks.
- Policing unauthorized use of our services and trademarks is difficult, expensive and time-consuming, and we may be unable to determine the extent of any unauthorized use.

Reverse engineering, unauthorized copying or other misappropriation of our proprietary technology could enable third parties to benefit from our technology without paying us for it, which would significantly harm our business.

**If other parties bring infringement or other claims against us, we may incur significant costs or lose customers.**

Other companies may obtain patents or other proprietary rights that would limit our ability to conduct our business and could assert that our technologies infringe their proprietary rights. We have incurred substantial costs to defend against such claims in the past and could incur legal costs in the future, even if without merit, and intellectual property litigation could force us to cease using key technology, obtain a license or redesign our products. In the course of our business, we may sell certain systems to our customers, and in connection with such sale, we may agree to indemnify these customers from claims made against them by third parties for patent infringement related to these systems, which could harm our business.
If we lose key personnel or fail to integrate replacement personnel successfully, our ability to manage our business could be impaired.

Our future success depends upon the continued service of our key management, technical, sales and other critical personnel, particularly our Chief Executive Officer. Most of our officers and other key personnel are employees-at-will, and we cannot assure that we will be able to retain them. Key personnel have left our company in the past, sometimes to accept employment with companies that sell similar products or services to existing or potential customers of ours. There will likely be additional departures of key personnel from time to time in the future and such departures could result in additional competition, loss of customers or confusion in the marketplace. As we seek to replace such departures, or expand our business, the hiring of qualified sales, technical and support personnel has been difficult due to the limited number of qualified professionals. The loss of any key employee could result in significant disruptions to our operations, including adversely affecting the timeliness of product releases, the successful implementation and completion of company initiatives and the results of our operations. In addition, we do not have life insurance policies on any of our key employees. If we lose the services of any of our key employees, the integration of replacement personnel could be time consuming, may cause disruptions to our operations and may be unsuccessful.

We face risks associated with government regulation of the internet and related legal uncertainties.

Currently, few existing laws or regulations specifically apply to the Internet, other than laws generally applicable to businesses. Many Internet-related laws and regulations, however, are pending and may be adopted in the United States, in individual states and local jurisdictions and in other countries. These laws may relate to many areas that impact our business, including encryption, network and information security, and the convergence of traditional communication services, such as telephone services, with Internet communications, taxes and wireless networks. These types of regulations could differ between countries and other political and geographic divisions both inside and outside the United States. Non-U.S. countries and political organizations may impose, or favor, more and different regulation than that which has been proposed in the United States, thus furthering the complexity of regulation. In addition, state and local governments within the United States may impose regulations in addition to, inconsistent with, or stricter than federal regulations. The adoption of such laws or regulations, and uncertainties associated with their validity, interpretation, applicability and enforcement, may affect the available distribution channels for, and the costs associated with, our products and services. The adoption of such laws and regulations may harm our business.

Exercise of outstanding options and warrants will result in further dilution.

The issuance of shares of common stock upon the exercise of our outstanding options and warrants will result in dilution to the interests of our stockholders, and may reduce the trading price of our common stock.

At September 30, 2016, we had 135 thousand outstanding warrants and 1.6 million of outstanding stock options granted under our stock option plans, 1.2 million of which are immediately exercisable.

To the extent that these stock options are exercised, dilution to the interests of our stockholders will likely occur. Additional options and warrants may be issued in the future at prices not less than 85% of the fair market value of the underlying security on the date of grant. Exercises of these options, or even the potential of their exercise may have an adverse effect on the trading price of our common stock. The holders of our options are likely to exercise them at times when the market price of the common stock exceeds the exercise price of the securities. Accordingly, the issuance of shares of common stock upon exercise of the options will likely result in dilution of the equity represented by the then outstanding shares of common stock held by other stockholders. Holders of our options can be expected to exercise or convert them at a time when we would, in all likelihood, be able to obtain any needed capital on terms, which are more favorable to us than the exercise terms provided, by these options.

Our ability to utilize our net operating loss carryforwards may be limited.

The use of our net operating loss carryforwards may have limitations resulting from certain future ownership changes, time limitations or other factors under the Internal Revenue Code and other taxing authorities.
If our net operating loss carryforwards are limited, and we have taxable income which exceeds the available net operating loss carryforwards for that period, we would incur an income tax liability even though net operating loss carryforwards may be available in future years prior to their expiration. Any such income tax liability may adversely affect our future cash flow, financial position and financial results.

Our business is subject to changing regulations regarding corporate governance and public disclosure that will increase both our costs and the risk of noncompliance.

As a publicly traded company we are subject to significant regulations, including the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. While we have developed and instituted a corporate compliance program based on what we believe are the current best practices and continue to update the program in response to newly implemented regulatory requirements and guidance, we cannot assure that we are or will be in compliance with all potentially applicable regulations.

Although our non-affiliate market capitalization was less than $75 million at March 31, 2016 and we were therefore not required to have an auditor attestation on our internal controls over financial reporting for fiscal 2016, SEC rules may in the future require us to have such an attestation if our non-affiliate market capitalization exceeds a certain threshold. We have found material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting in the past and cannot assure that in the future our management or our auditors, will not find additional material weaknesses in connection with our internal control over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. We also cannot assure that we could correct all such weaknesses to allow our management to attest that we have maintained effective internal controls over financial reporting as of the end of our fiscal year in time to enable our independent registered public accounting firm to attest that such assessment will have been fairly stated in our Annual Report on Form 10-K to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission or attest that we have maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of the end of our fiscal year. If we fail to comply with any of these regulations, we could be subject to a range of regulatory actions, fines, or other sanctions or litigation. In addition, the disclosure of any material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting could have a negative impact on our stock price.

Provisions of our charter documents and Maryland law could also discourage an acquisition of our company that would benefit our stockholders.

Provisions of our articles of incorporation and by-laws may make it more difficult for a third party to acquire control of our company, even if a change in control would benefit our stockholders. Our articles of incorporation authorize our board of directors, without stockholder approval, to issue one or more series of preferred stock, which could have voting and conversion rights that adversely affect or dilute the voting power of the holders of common stock. Furthermore, our articles of incorporation provide for a classified board of directors, which means that our stockholders may vote upon the retention of only one or two of our five directors each year. Moreover, Maryland corporate law restricts certain business combination transactions with “interested stockholders” and limits voting rights upon certain acquisitions of “control shares.”

ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

None.

ITEM 2. PROPERTIES

Our principal office is located in Madison, Wisconsin in a leased facility of approximately 26,000 square feet. The building serves as our corporate headquarters, accommodating our general and administrative, product development and selling and marketing departments. We believe this facility is adequate for our needs. The current lease term for this office expires on December 31, 2018.
Our operations in Japan are managed in Tokyo, Japan in a leased facility of approximately 9,874 square feet with a term expiring on December 31, 2020. The facility includes sales, technical and administrative functions. The rent for the remainder of the lease period is approximately $41 thousand per month.

Our European operations are managed in Utrecht, Netherlands in a leased facility of approximately 3,886 square feet with a term expiring on January 31, 2019. The facility includes sales, technical and administrative functions. The rent for the remainder of the lease period is approximately $5 thousand per month.

ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

None.

ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

Not applicable.
PART II
ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS, AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES

Price Range of Common Stock

Our common stock was initially traded on the American Stock Exchange under the symbol “SFO,” beginning with our initial public offering in April of 1998. On April 24, 2000, our common stock began trading on the NASDAQ Global Market under the symbol “SOFO.” Effective September 16, 2009, we transferred the listing of our common stock to the NASDAQ Capital Market. The following table sets forth, for the periods indicated, the high and low sale prices per share of our common stock as reported on the NASDAQ Global or Capital Markets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year Ended September 30, 2017:</th>
<th>High</th>
<th>Low</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Quarter (through December 9, 2016)</td>
<td>$5.92</td>
<td>$4.50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year Ended September 30, 2016:</th>
<th>High</th>
<th>Low</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Quarter</td>
<td>8.25</td>
<td>5.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Quarter</td>
<td>6.98</td>
<td>4.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Quarter</td>
<td>8.51</td>
<td>5.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Quarter</td>
<td>6.50</td>
<td>5.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year Ended September 30, 2015:</th>
<th>High</th>
<th>Low</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Quarter</td>
<td>10.57</td>
<td>7.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Quarter</td>
<td>9.90</td>
<td>7.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Quarter</td>
<td>10.47</td>
<td>5.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Quarter</td>
<td>9.38</td>
<td>5.30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dividends

The Company has not paid any cash dividends and does not intend to pay any cash dividends in the foreseeable future. The Company is prohibited from paying any cash dividends pursuant to the terms of the loan and security agreement with Silicon Valley Bank.

Holders

At December 9, 2016, there were 238 common stockholders of record and approximately 4,000 total shareholders. Many shares are held by brokers and other institutions on behalf of shareholders.

Equity Compensation Plan Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan category</th>
<th>Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights</th>
<th>Weighted average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights</th>
<th>Number of securities remaining available for future issuance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Equity compensation plans approved by security holders (1)</td>
<td>1,550,264</td>
<td>$8.58</td>
<td>373,389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders (2)</td>
<td>52,558</td>
<td>12.87</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,602,822</strong></td>
<td><strong>$9.52</strong></td>
<td><strong>373,389</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(1) Consists of the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan, Employee Incentive Stock Option Plan and the Directors Stock Option Plans. For further information regarding these plans, reference is made to Note 5 of the financial statements.

(2) Consists of the Non-Qualified Stock Option Plan. For further information regarding this plan, reference is made to Note 5 of the financial statements.

The graph below compares the cumulative total stockholder return on our common stock from September 30, 2011 through and including September 30, 2016 with the cumulative total return on The NASDAQ Stock Market (US only) and the RDG Technology Composite. The graph assumes that $100 was invested in our common stock on September 30, 2011 for each of the indexes and that all dividends were reinvested. Unless otherwise specified, all dates refer to the last day of each month presented. The comparisons in the graph below are based on historical data, with our common stock prices based on the closing price on the dates indicated, and are not intended to forecast the possible future performance of our common stock.

**COMPARISON OF 5 YEAR CUMULATIVE TOTAL RETURN***

*$100 invested on 9/30/11 in stock or index, including reinvestment of dividends Fiscal year ending September 30.
ITEM 6. SELECTED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL DATA

The selected financial and operating data were derived from our consolidated financial statements. The selected financial data set forth below is qualified in its entirety by, and should be read in conjunction with, “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our financial statements and notes thereto appearing elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K (in thousands except per share data).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Revenue</td>
<td>$37,975</td>
<td>$36,459</td>
<td>$35,830</td>
<td>$27,756</td>
<td>$26,090</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost of revenue</td>
<td>9,985</td>
<td>10,635</td>
<td>10,275</td>
<td>7,696</td>
<td>7,246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross margin</td>
<td>27,990</td>
<td>25,824</td>
<td>25,555</td>
<td>20,060</td>
<td>18,844</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating expenses</td>
<td>30,266</td>
<td>29,916</td>
<td>28,637</td>
<td>20,698</td>
<td>18,735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Income (loss) from operations</td>
<td>(2,276)</td>
<td>(4,092)</td>
<td>(3,082)</td>
<td>(638)</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gain on investment in Mediasite KK</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1,390</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equity in earnings from investment in Mediasite KK</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other income (expense), net</td>
<td>(178)</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>(123)</td>
<td>(132)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest expense, net</td>
<td>(594)</td>
<td>(372)</td>
<td>(231)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision for income taxes</td>
<td>(269)</td>
<td>(107)</td>
<td>(1,104)</td>
<td>(240)</td>
<td>(240)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net income (loss)</td>
<td>$ (3,317)</td>
<td>$ (4,525)</td>
<td>$ (2,816)</td>
<td>$ (792)</td>
<td>$ 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic net income (loss) per common share</td>
<td>$ (0.76)</td>
<td>$ (1.04)</td>
<td>$ (0.67)</td>
<td>$ (0.20)</td>
<td>$ 0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diluted net income (loss) per common share</td>
<td>$ (0.76)</td>
<td>$ (1.04)</td>
<td>$ (0.67)</td>
<td>$ (0.20)</td>
<td>$ 0.04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Weighted average common shares:
- Basic 4,389,421 4,332,576 4,174,191 3,932,692 3,857,161
- Diluted 4,389,421 4,332,576 4,174,191 3,932,692 3,907,888

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cash and cash equivalents</td>
<td>$1,794</td>
<td>$1,976</td>
<td>$4,344</td>
<td>$3,482</td>
<td>$4,478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working capital</td>
<td>(2,645)</td>
<td>(618)</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>2,575</td>
<td>3,332</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total assets</td>
<td>33,158</td>
<td>34,803</td>
<td>34,623</td>
<td>24,333</td>
<td>22,821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term liabilities</td>
<td>7,249</td>
<td>8,435</td>
<td>7,268</td>
<td>3,585</td>
<td>3,748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stockholders’ equity</td>
<td>6,516</td>
<td>7,803</td>
<td>11,315</td>
<td>10,704</td>
<td>10,539</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT’S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The financial and business analysis below provides information that Sonic Foundry, Inc. (the “Company”) believes is relevant to an assessment and understanding of the Company’s consolidated financial position and results of operations. This financial and business analysis should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and related notes.

This report includes estimates, projections, statements relating to our business plans, objectives, and expected operating results that are “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995, Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Forward-looking statements may appear throughout this report, including the following sections: “Management’s Discussion and Analysis,” and “Risk Factors.” These forward-looking statements generally are identified by the words “believe,” “project,” “expect,” “anticipate,” “estimate,” “intend,” “strategy,” “future,” “opportunity,” “plan,” “may,” “should,” “will,” “would,” “will be,” “will continue,” “will likely result,” and similar expressions. Forward-looking statements are based on current expectations and assumptions that are subject to risks and uncertainties that may cause actual results to differ materially. We describe risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results and events to differ materially in “Risk Factors” (Part 1, Item 1A of this Form 10-K), “Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk” (Part II, Item 7A of this Form 10-K), and in this Item 7. We undertake no obligation to update or revise publicly any forward-looking statements, whether because of new information, future events, or otherwise.

Overview

Sonic Foundry, Inc. is a technology leader in the emerging web communications marketplace, providing video content management and distribution for education, business and government. Using the Mediasite webcasting platform and webcast services of the Company’s events team, the Company empowers its customers to advance how they share knowledge online, using video webcasts to bridge time and distance, enhance learning outcomes and improve performance.

Critical Accounting Policies

We have identified the following as critical accounting policies to our Company and have discussed the development, selection of estimates and the disclosure regarding them with the audit committee of the board of directors:

• Revenue recognition, allowance for doubtful accounts and reserves;
• Impairment of long-lived assets;
• Valuation allowance for net deferred tax assets; and
• Accounting for stock-based compensation.

Revenue Recognition, Allowance for Doubtful Accounts and Reserves

General

Revenue is recognized when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, delivery occurs or services are rendered, the sales price is fixed or determinable and collectability is reasonably assured. Revenue is deferred when undelivered products or services are essential to the functionality of delivered products, customer acceptance is uncertain, significant obligations remain, or the fair value of undelivered elements is unknown. Typically, the Company does not offer customers the right to return product, other than for exchange or repair pursuant to a warranty or stock rotation. The Company’s policy is to reduce revenue if it incurs an obligation for price rebates or other such programs during the period the obligation is reasonably estimated to occur. The following policies apply to the Company’s major categories of revenue transactions.
Products

Products are considered delivered, and revenue is recognized, when title and risk of loss have been transferred to the customer or upon customer acceptance if non-delivered products or services are essential to the functionality of delivered products. Under the terms and conditions of the sale, this occurs at the time of shipment to the customer. Product revenue currently represents sales of our Mediasite recorders and Mediasite related products such as our server software and other software licenses. If a license is time-based, the revenue is recognized over the term of the license agreement.

Services

The Company sells support and content hosting contracts to our customers, typically one year in length, and records the related revenue ratably over the contractual period. Our support contracts cover phone and electronic technical support availability over and above the level provided by our distributors, software upgrades on a when and if available basis, advance hardware replacement and an extension of the standard hardware warranty from 90 days to one year. The manufacturers the Company contracts with to build the units provide a limited one-year warranty on the hardware. The Company also sells installation, training, event webcasting, and customer content hosting services. Revenue for those services is recognized when performed in the case of installation, training and event webcasting services. Occasionally, the Company will sell customization services to enhance the server software. Revenue from those services is recognized when performed, if perfunctory, or under contract accounting. Service amounts invoiced to customers in excess of revenue recognized are recorded as deferred revenue until the revenue recognition criteria are met.

Revenue Arrangements that Include Multiple Elements

Sales of software, with or without installation, training, and post customer support fall within the scope of the software revenue recognition rules. Under the software revenue recognition rules, the fee from a multiple-deliverable arrangement is allocated to each of the undelivered elements based upon vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE), which is limited to the price charged when the same deliverable is sold separately, with the residual value from the arrangement allocated to the delivered element. The portion of the fee that is allocated to each deliverable is then recognized as revenue when the criteria for revenue recognition are met with respect to that deliverable. If VSOE does not exist for all of the undelivered elements, then all revenue from the arrangement is typically deferred until all elements have been delivered to the customer.

In the case of the Company’s hardware products with embedded software, the Company has determined that the hardware and software components function together to deliver the product’s essential functionality, and therefore, the revenue from the sale of these products is accounted for under the revenue recognition rules for tangible products whereby the fee from a multiple-deliverable arrangement is allocated to each of the deliverables based upon their relative selling prices as determined by a selling-price hierarchy. A deliverable in an arrangement qualifies as a separate unit of accounting if the delivered item has value to the customer on a stand-alone basis. A delivered item that does not qualify as a separate unit of accounting is combined with the other undelivered items in the arrangement and revenue is recognized for those combined deliverables as a single unit of accounting. The selling price used for each deliverable is based upon VSOE if available, from third-party evidence (TPE) if VSOE is not available, and best estimate of selling price (ESP) if neither VSOE nor TPE are available. TPE is the price of the Company’s or any competitor’s largely interchangeable products or services in stand-alone sales to similarly situated customers. ESP is the price at which the Company would sell the deliverable if it were sold regularly on a stand-alone basis, considering market conditions and entity-specific factors. All revenue arrangements, excluding the sale of all software-only products and associated services, have been accounted for under this guidance.

The selling prices used in the relative selling price allocation method are as follows: (1) the Company’s products and services are based upon VSOE and (2) hardware products with embedded software, for which VSOE does not exist, are based upon ESP. The Company does not believe TPE exists for any of these products and services because they are differentiated from competing products and services in terms of functionality and performance and there are no competing products or services that are largely interchangeable. Management establishes ESP for hardware products with embedded software using a cost plus margin approach.
with consideration for market conditions, such as the impact of competition and geographic considerations, and entity-specific factors, such as the cost of the product and the Company’s profit objectives. Management believes that ESP is reflective of reasonable pricing of that deliverable as if priced on a stand-alone basis. When a sales transaction includes deliverables that are divided between Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) Topic 605 and ASC Subtopic 985-605, the Company allocates the selling price using the relative selling price method whereas value is allocated using an ESP for software developed using a percent of list price approach. The other deliverables are valued using ESP or VSOE as previously discussed.

While the pricing model, currently in use, captures all critical variables, unforeseen changes due to external market forces may result in a revision of the inputs. These modifications may result in the consideration allocation differing from the one presently in use. Absent a significant change in the pricing inputs or the way in which the industry structures its deals, future changes in the pricing model are not expected to materially affect our allocation of arrangement consideration.

Management has established VSOE for hosting services. Billings for hosting are spread ratably over the term of the hosting agreement, with the typical hosting agreement having a term of 12 months, with renewal on an annual basis. The Company sells most hosting contracts without the inclusion of products. When the hosting arrangement is sold in conjunction with product, the product revenue is recognized immediately while the remaining hosting revenue is spread ratably over the term of the hosting agreement. The selling price is allocated between these elements using the relative selling price method. The Company uses ESP for development of the selling price for hardware products with embedded software.

The Company also offers hosting services bundled with events services. The Company uses VSOE to establish relative selling prices for its events services. The Company recognizes events revenue when the event takes place and recognizes the hosting revenue over the term of the hosting agreement. The total amount of the arrangement is allocated to each element based on the relative selling price method.

Reserves

The Company reserves for stock rotations, price adjustments, rebates, and sales incentives to reduce revenue and accounts receivable for these and other credits granted to customers. Such reserves are recorded at the time of sale and are calculated based on historical information (such as rates of product stock rotations) and the specific terms of sales programs, taking into account any other known information about likely customer behavior. If actual customer behavior differs from our expectations, it may compromise our ability to recognize revenue to these distributors at the time of shipment. Also, if the Company determines that it can no longer accurately estimate amounts for stock rotations and sales incentives, the Company would not be able to recognize revenue until resellers sell the inventory to the final end user.

Credit Evaluation and Allowance for Doubtful Accounts

We assess the realization of our receivables by performing ongoing credit evaluations of our customers’ financial condition. Through these evaluations, we may become aware of a situation where a customer may not be able to meet its financial obligations due to deterioration of its financial viability, credit ratings or bankruptcy. Our reserve requirements are based on the best facts available to us and are reevaluated and adjusted as additional information is received. Our reserves are also based on amounts determined by using percentages applied to certain aged receivable categories. These percentages are determined by a variety of factors including, but not limited to, current economic trends, historical payment and bad debt write-off experience.

Impairment of long-lived assets

Goodwill has an indefinite useful life and is recorded at cost and not amortized but, instead, tested at least annually for impairment. We assess the impairment of goodwill on an annual basis or whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the fair value of these assets is less than the carrying value. If a qualitative assessment is used and the Company determines that the fair value of goodwill is more likely than not (i.e., a likelihood of more than 50%) less than its carrying amount, a quantitative impairment test will be performed. If goodwill is quantitatively assessed for impairment, a two-step approach is applied. First,
the Company compares the estimated fair value of the goodwill to its carrying value. The second step, if necessary, measures the amount of impairment, if any, by comparing the implied fair value of goodwill to its carrying value.

In fiscal 2016 and 2015, we performed the two-step goodwill test and determined that the fair value of goodwill was more than the carrying value. For purposes of the fiscal 2016 and 2015 tests, goodwill balances are evaluated within three separate reporting units. The Company has recognized no impairment charges as of September 30, 2016 or as of September 30, 2015.

If we had determined that the fair value of goodwill is less than its carrying value, based upon the annual test or the existence of one or more indicators of impairment, we would then measure impairment based on a comparison of the implied fair value of goodwill with the carrying amount of goodwill. To the extent the carrying amount of goodwill is greater than the implied fair value of goodwill, we would record an impairment charge for the difference.

Long-lived assets and intangible assets other than goodwill are evaluated for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying value of an asset may not be recoverable based on expected undiscounted cash flows attributable to that asset. For the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, no events or changes in circumstances occurred that required this analysis.

Valuation allowance for net deferred tax assets

Deferred tax assets and liabilities are determined based on differences between the financial statement and tax bases of assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates in effect in the years in which the differences are expected to reverse. We do not provide for U.S. income taxes on the undistributed earnings of our foreign subsidiaries, which we consider to be permanently invested outside of the U.S.

We make judgments regarding the realizability of our deferred tax assets. The balance sheet carrying value of our net deferred tax assets is based on whether we believe that it is more likely than not that we will generate sufficient future taxable income to realize these deferred tax assets after consideration of all available evidence. We regularly review our deferred tax assets for recoverability considering historical profitability, projected future taxable income, the expected timing of the reversals of existing temporary differences and tax planning strategies. In assessing the need for a valuation allowance, we consider both positive and negative evidence related to the likelihood of realization of the deferred tax assets. The weight given to the positive and negative evidence is commensurate with the extent to which the evidence may be objectively verified. As such, it is generally difficult for positive evidence regarding projected future taxable income exclusive of reversing taxable temporary differences to outweigh objective negative evidence of recent financial reporting losses. Generally, cumulative loss in recent years is a significant piece of negative evidence that is difficult to overcome in determining that a valuation allowance is not needed.

As of September 30, 2016 and 2015, valuation allowances have been established for all U.S. and for certain foreign deferred tax assets which we believe do not meet the “more likely than not” criteria for recognition. If we are subsequently able to utilize all or a portion of the deferred tax assets for which a valuation allowance has been established, then we may be required to recognize these deferred tax assets through the reduction of the valuation allowance which could result in a material benefit to our results of operations in the period in which the benefit is determined.

Accounting for stock-based compensation

The Company uses a lattice valuation model to account for all employee stock options granted. The lattice valuation model is a more flexible analysis to value options because of its ability to incorporate inputs that change over time, such as actual exercise behavior of option holders. The Company uses historical data to estimate the option exercise and employee departure behavior in the lattice valuation model. Expected volatility is based on historical volatility of the Company’s stock. The Company considers all employees to have similar exercise behavior and therefore has not identified separate homogenous groups for valuation. The expected term of options granted is derived from the output of the option pricing model and represents the period of time that
options granted are expected to be outstanding. The risk-free rate for periods the options are expected to be outstanding is based on the U.S. Treasury yields in effect at the time of grant. Forfeitures are based on actual behavior patterns.

All transactions in which goods or services are the consideration received for the issuance of equity instruments are accounted for based on the fair value of the consideration received or the fair value of the equity instrument issued, whichever is more reliably measured.

RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

You should read the following discussion of our results of operations and financial condition in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes thereto included in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Revenue

Revenue from our business includes the sale of Mediasite recorders and server software products and related services contracts, such as customer support, installation, customization services, training, content hosting and event services. We market our products to educational institutions, corporations and government agencies that need to deploy, manage, index and distribute video content on Internet-based networks. We reach both our domestic and international markets through reseller networks, a direct sales effort and partnerships with system integrators.

Revenue in fiscal 2016 totaled $38.0 million, compared to $36.5 million in fiscal 2015, an increase of 4%. Revenue consisted of the following:

- Product and other revenue from the sale of Mediasite recorder units and server software decreased from $16.3 million in fiscal 2015 to $16.2 million in fiscal 2016. Revenue for 208 recorders delivered in Q4-2015 to an international customer was deferred at September 30, 2016 and the units are not included in the units sold figures shown below. The average sales price per unit improved in fiscal 2016 while total units sold decreased as compared to fiscal 2015 during which both the average sales price per unit and the number of units sold were impacted by two large discounted deals to international customers for over 250 units.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Units sold</strong></td>
<td>1,474</td>
<td>1,977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rack to mobile ratio</strong></td>
<td>5.9 to 1</td>
<td>5.8 to 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Average sales price, excluding support (000’s)</strong></td>
<td>$7.9</td>
<td>$7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Refresh Units</strong></td>
<td>426</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Services revenue represents the portion of fees charged for Mediasite customer support contracts amortized over the length of the contract, typically 12 months, as well as training, installation, event and content hosting services. Services revenue increased from $20.2 million in fiscal 2015 to $21.7 million in fiscal 2016 due primarily to an increase in hosting revenues as compared to fiscal 2015. In addition, revenue related to support contracts on Mediasite recorder units increased compared to fiscal 2015. At September 30, 2016, $14.1 million of revenue was deferred, of which we expect to recognize $12.8 million in the next twelve months, including approximately $4.5 million in the quarter ending December 31, 2016. At September 30, 2015, $12.7 million of revenue was deferred.

- Other revenue relates to freight charges billed separately to our customers.

Gross Margin

Total gross margin in fiscal 2016 was $28.0 million or 74% compared to $25.8 million or 71% in fiscal 2015. Gross margin percentage improved over year over year mainly due to revenue increases in software and support contracts, which have higher margins. The significant components of cost of revenue include:
Material and freight costs for Mediasite recorders. Costs for fiscal 2016 Mediasite recorder hardware and other costs totaled $3.8 million compared to $5.3 million in fiscal 2015. Freight costs were $278 thousand, and labor and allocated costs were $1.6 million in fiscal 2016 compared to $276 thousand and $1.3 million, respectively, in fiscal 2015. The remaining $750 thousand in fiscal 2016 and $632 thousand in fiscal 2015 relate to material and freight costs for Sonic Foundry International and MSKK.

Services costs. Staff wages and other costs allocated to cost of service revenues were $2.0 million in fiscal 2016 and $1.9 million in fiscal 2015, respectively, resulting in gross margin on services of 84% in fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, respectively. The remaining $1.5 million in fiscal 2016 and $1.3 million in fiscal 2015 relate to costs of providing content hosting, events and technical support services at Sonic Foundry International and MSKK.

The Company expects the gross margin percentage to remain consistent or slightly increase in fiscal 2017 as a result of an expected increase in software revenue and a slight decrease in the cost of certain products.

Operating Expenses

Selling and Marketing Expenses

Selling and marketing expenses include wages and commissions for sales, marketing and business development personnel, print advertising and various promotional expenses for our products. Timing of these costs may vary greatly depending on introduction of new products and services or entrance into new markets, or participation in major tradeshows.

Selling and marketing expense decreased $215 thousand, or 1%, from $18.0 million in fiscal 2015 to $17.8 million in fiscal 2016. Fluctuations in the major categories include:

- Advertising and tradeshow expenses decreased $180 thousand.
- Overall costs allocated to selling & marketing decreased by $119 thousand, primarily as a result of a decrease in facilities expenses (G&A) and an increase in selling & marketing expenses allocated to cost of goods sold.
- Selling and marketing expenses for Sonic Foundry International and MSKK accounted for $312 thousand and $2.8 million, respectively in fiscal 2016, an aggregate increase of $160 thousand from the prior year. The increase is mainly due to the impact of foreign currency exchange rates in fiscal 2016.

At September 30, 2016, we had 132 employees in selling and marketing, a decrease from 134 employees at September 30, 2015. Of the 132 employees in selling and marketing at September 30, 2016, 45 are employed by our foreign subsidiaries. We anticipate minimal growth in selling and marketing headcount in fiscal 2017.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative (“G&A”) expenses consist of personnel and related costs associated with the facilities, finance, legal, human resources and information technology departments, as well as other expenses not fully allocated to functional areas.

G&A expenses remained consistent at $5.6 million in both fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015. Fluctuations in major categories include:

- Increase in compensation and benefits of $196 thousand related to an increase in headcount during the year.
- Decrease in facilities expenses of $219 thousand, primarily due to an increase in hosting expenses allocated to cost of revenue.
- Increase in costs allocable to G&A of $54 thousand, primarily as a result of higher expenses related to computer and office supplies.
- G&A expenses for Sonic Foundry International and MSKK accounted for $156 thousand and $884 thousand, respectively in fiscal 2016, an aggregate decrease of $46 thousand from the prior year.
At September 30, 2016, we had 27 full-time employees in G&A, an increase from 25 full-time employees at September 30, 2015. Of the 27 employees in G&A at September 30, 2016, 11 are employed by our foreign subsidiaries. We do not anticipate growth in G&A headcount in fiscal 2017.

**Product Development Expenses**

Product development expenses include salaries and wages of the software research and development staff and an allocation of benefits, facility and administrative expenses.

Product development expenses increased $572 thousand, or 9%, from $6.3 million in fiscal 2015 to $6.8 million in fiscal 2016. Fluctuations include:

- Increase in compensation and benefits of $366 thousand due to a higher average headcount during the year and an increase in compensation rates.
- Professional services increase of $144 thousand, mainly due to the use of outsourced development.
- Costs allocated from G&A increased by $28 thousand.
- Product development expenses for Sonic Foundry International and MSKK accounted for $389 thousand and $51 thousand, respectively for fiscal 2016, an aggregate increase of $14 thousand from the prior year related to the subsidiaries.

At September 30, 2016, we had 46 full-time employees in product development compared to 43 employees at September 30, 2015. Of the 46 employees in product development at September 30, 2016, 8 are employed by our foreign subsidiaries. There were no software development efforts in fiscal 2016 or 2015 that qualified for capitalization. We anticipate slight growth in product development headcount in fiscal 2017.

**Other Income and Expense, Net**

Interest expense for the twelve months ended September 30, 2016 increased $222 thousand compared to fiscal 2015 due primarily to higher rate debt outstanding with Partners for Growth IV, L.P. (“PFG”) and other related costs. Included in interest expense for fiscal 2016 is $88 thousand of expense related to the discounts and related accretion on the PFG Loan and Warrant Debt. There was $27 thousand of expense related to the discounts and related accretion on the PFG Loan and Warrant Debt included in interest expense in fiscal 2015.

During the twelve months ended September 30, 2016, a gain of $57 thousand was recorded related to the fair value remeasurement on the derivative liability associated with the PFG Loan and Warrant Debt. In the twelve months ended September 30, 2015, a gain of $11 thousand was recorded related to the fair value remeasurement on the derivative liability associated with the PFG Loan and Warrant Debt included in interest expense in fiscal 2015.

During the twelve months ended September 30, 2016, a foreign currency gain of $3 thousand was realized related to re-measurement of the subordinated notes payable related to the Company’s foreign subsidiaries. In the twelve months ended September 30, 2015, a foreign currency gain of $202 thousand was recorded related to the remeasurement.

**Provisions Related to Income Taxes**

The Company records a non-cash deferred tax liability related to tax amortization of goodwill acquired in 2001. The income tax benefit related to this amortization was $240 thousand for both fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, respectively.

**Foreign Currency Translation Adjustment**

The Company’s wholly-owned subsidiaries operate in Japan and the Netherlands, and utilize the Japanese Yen and Euro, respectively, as their functional currency. Assets and liabilities of the Company’s foreign operations are translated into US dollars at period end exchange rates while revenues and expenses are translated using average rates for the period. Gains and losses
from the translation are deferred and included in accumulated other comprehensive loss on the consolidated statements of operations.

For the year ended September 30, 2016, the Company’s foreign currency translation adjustment was a gain of $939 thousand compared to a loss of $701 thousand in the year ended September 30, 2015. The gain in fiscal 2016 is attributable to the strengthening in the Japanese Yen and the Euro compared to the US dollar during the period as compared to fiscal 2015.

LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

The Company’s primary sources of liquidity are its cash, revolving line of credit, and in fiscal 2016, cash from operating activities. During fiscal 2016, the Company generated $1.7 million of cash from operating activities compared with $3.1 million of cash used for operating activities in fiscal 2015. The increase in cash generated from operating activities was primarily due to the Company’s reduced net loss and an increase in cash generated from decreased working capital, predominantly a decrease in accounts receivable in fiscal 2016 rather than an increase recorded in fiscal 2015.

Capital expenditures for property and equipment were $339 thousand in fiscal 2016 compared to $722 thousand in fiscal 2015.

The Company used $1.6 million of cash for financing activities during fiscal 2016, mainly as a result of net payments on the line of credit and notes payable. The Company generated proceeds of $1.6 million in fiscal 2015 due to net proceeds on the line of credit and proceeds from equity transactions, including issuance of common stock and warrants, and exercise of common stock options.

At September 30, 2016, the Company had a $4.0 million revolving line of credit with Silicon Valley Bank. The line of credit bears interest at prime rate plus 1.25%. At September 30, 2016, outstanding borrowings were $1.6 million. The highest balance on the line of credit during the year was $3.26 million. At September 30, 2016, there was a remaining amount of $2.3 million available under the line of credit for advances. At September 30, 2015, outstanding borrowings were $1.4 million.

At September 30, 2016, the Company had $1.1 million of notes payable with Silicon Valley Bank and $1.3 million of notes payable, net of warrant debt discounts, with PFG. At September 30, 2015, the Company had $1.9 million outstanding related to notes payable with Silicon Valley Bank and $1.4 million of notes payable, net of warrant debt discounts, with PFG. The Company used cash for a net $1.2 million in payments on notes during the twelve months ended September 30, 2016 compared to cash used for a net $558 thousand in payments on notes in the same period of fiscal 2015. These amounts include payments on subordinated notes payable as a result of the acquisitions completed in fiscal 2014. In connection with the Loan and Security Agreement and Warrant with PFG, amortization expense of $71 thousand related to the debt discount was incurred as a non-cash interest expense in fiscal 2016. In fiscal 2015, amortization expense of $22 thousand was recorded related to the debt discount with PFG.

At September 30, 2016 approximately $1.6 million of cash and cash equivalents was held by the Company’s foreign subsidiaries.

The Company believes its cash position plus available resources is adequate to accomplish its business plan through at least the next twelve months. We will likely evaluate operating and capital lease opportunities to finance equipment purchases in the future and anticipate utilizing the Company’s revolving line of credit to support working capital needs. We may also seek additional equity financing, or issue additional shares previously registered in our available shelf registration, although we currently have no plans to do so.

Contractual Obligations

The following summarizes our contractual obligations at September 30, 2016 and the effect those obligations are expected to have on our liquidity and cash flow in future periods (in thousands):


**Contractual Obligations:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Less than 1 Year</th>
<th>Years 2-3</th>
<th>Years 4-5</th>
<th>Over 5 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Product purchase commitments</td>
<td>$782</td>
<td>$782</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating lease obligations</td>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>1,341</td>
<td>2,001</td>
<td>658</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capital lease obligations (a)</td>
<td>551</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes payable (a)</td>
<td>2,630</td>
<td>1,789</td>
<td>841</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subordinated notes payable (a)</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Includes fixed and determinable interest payments

**ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

**Derivative Financial Instruments**

Pursuant to Item 305 of Regulation S-K, the Company, as a smaller reporting company, is not required to provide the information required by this item.

**Interest Rate Risk**

Our cash equivalents, which consist of overnight money market funds, are subject to interest rate fluctuations, however, we believe this risk is minimal due to the short-term nature of these investments.

At September 30, 2016, $2.7 million of the Company’s $4.3 million in outstanding debt is variable rate. We do not expect that an increase in the level of interest rates would have a material impact on our Consolidated Financial Statements. We monitor our positions with, and the credit quality of, the financial institutions that are party to any of our financial transactions.

**Foreign Currency Exchange Rate Risk**

The functional currency of our foreign subsidiaries in the Netherlands is the Euro and in Japan is the Japanese Yen. They are subject to foreign currency exchange rate risk. Any increase or decrease in the exchange rate of the U.S. Dollar compared to the Euro or Japanese Yen will impact our future operating results and financial position.
ITEM 8. CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Shareholders, Audit Committee and Board of Directors
Sonic Foundry, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Madison, WI

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Sonic Foundry, Inc. and Subsidiaries (the “Company”) as of September 30, 2016 and 2015, and the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive loss, stockholders’ equity, and cash flows for the years then ended. These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement. The company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. Our audits included consideration of its internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the company’s internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management as well as evaluating the overall consolidated financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Sonic Foundry, Inc. and Subsidiaries as of September 30, 2016 and 2015, and the results of their operations and cash flows for the years then ended, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

/s/ Baker Tilly Virchow Krause, LLP

Madison, Wisconsin
December 22, 2016
## Sonic Foundry, Inc.
### Consolidated Balance Sheets
(in thousands, except for share and per share data)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Assets</th>
<th>Liabilities and stockholders’ equity</th>
<th>Stockholders’ equity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assets</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current assets:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cash and cash equivalents</td>
<td>$1,794</td>
<td>$1,976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounts receivable, net of allowances of $225 and $150</td>
<td>11,646</td>
<td>12,659</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inventories</td>
<td>1,904</td>
<td>2,385</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepaid expenses and other current assets</td>
<td>1,404</td>
<td>927</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total current assets</strong></td>
<td>16,748</td>
<td>17,947</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property and equipment:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leasehold improvements</td>
<td>879</td>
<td>904</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer equipment</td>
<td>5,837</td>
<td>5,852</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furniture and fixtures</td>
<td>825</td>
<td>837</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total property and equipment</strong></td>
<td>7,541</td>
<td>7,593</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less accumulated depreciation and amortization</td>
<td>5,510</td>
<td>4,785</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property and equipment, net</strong></td>
<td>2,031</td>
<td>2,808</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other assets:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwill</td>
<td>11,310</td>
<td>10,853</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer relationships, net of amortization of $723 and $457</td>
<td>1,882</td>
<td>1,872</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software development costs, net of amortization of $533 and $429</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product rights, net of amortization of $287 and $164</td>
<td>385</td>
<td>508</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other intangibles, net of amortization of $236 and $190</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other long-term assets</td>
<td>726</td>
<td>599</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total assets</strong></td>
<td>$33,158</td>
<td>$34,803</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Liabilities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current liabilities:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revolving line of credit</td>
<td>$1,772</td>
<td>$1,818</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounts payable</td>
<td>961</td>
<td>2,026</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accrued liabilities</td>
<td>1,883</td>
<td>1,666</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unearned revenue</td>
<td>12,834</td>
<td>11,359</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current portion of capital lease and financing arrangements</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current portion of notes payable and warrant debt, net of discounts</td>
<td>1,567</td>
<td>1,299</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current portion of subordinated note payable</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total current liabilities</strong></td>
<td>19,393</td>
<td>18,565</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term portion of unearned revenue</td>
<td>1,257</td>
<td>1,325</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term portion of capital lease and financing arrangements</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term portion of notes payable and warrant debt, net of discounts</td>
<td>871</td>
<td>2,080</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term portion of subordinated note payable</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivative liability, at fair value</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>109</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other liabilities</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>311</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deferred tax liability</td>
<td>4,564</td>
<td>4,322</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total liabilities</strong></td>
<td>26,642</td>
<td>27,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Commitments and contingencies</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stockholders’ equity:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferred stock, $.01 par value, authorized 500,000 shares; none issued</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5% Preferred stock, Series B, voting, cumulative, convertible, $.01 par value (liquidation preference at par), authorized 1,000,000 shares, none issued</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common stock, $.01 par value, authorized 10,000,000 shares; 4,424,275 and 4,376,456 shares issued and 4,411,559 and 4,363,740 shares outstanding</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional paid-in capital</td>
<td>197,064</td>
<td>195,973</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accumulated deficit</td>
<td>(190,214)</td>
<td>(186,897)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Sonic Foundry, Inc.  
**Consolidated Balance Sheets**  
*(in thousands, except for share and per share data)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>2007</th>
<th>2006</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accumulated other comprehensive loss</td>
<td>(183)</td>
<td>(1,122)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receivable for common stock issued</td>
<td>(26)</td>
<td>(26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treasury stock, at cost, 12,716 shares</td>
<td>(169)</td>
<td>(169)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total stockholders’ equity</strong></td>
<td>6,516</td>
<td>7,803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total liabilities and stockholders’ equity</strong></td>
<td>$33,158</td>
<td>$34,803</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.
Sonic Foundry, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Operations
(in thousands, except for share and per share data)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Revenue:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>$15,823</td>
<td>$15,884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Services</td>
<td>21,734</td>
<td>20,160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>418</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total revenue</strong></td>
<td>37,975</td>
<td>36,459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cost of revenue:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>6,459</td>
<td>7,406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Services</td>
<td>3,526</td>
<td>3,229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total cost of revenue</strong></td>
<td>9,985</td>
<td>10,635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gross margin</strong></td>
<td>27,990</td>
<td>25,824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operating expenses:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selling and marketing</td>
<td>17,801</td>
<td>18,016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General and administrative</td>
<td>5,628</td>
<td>5,635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product development</td>
<td>6,837</td>
<td>6,265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total operating expenses</strong></td>
<td>30,266</td>
<td>29,916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loss from operations</strong></td>
<td>(2,276)</td>
<td>(4,092)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-operating income (expenses):</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interest expense, net</td>
<td>(594)</td>
<td>(372)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other income (expense), net</td>
<td>(178)</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total non-operating income (expenses)</strong></td>
<td>(772)</td>
<td>(326)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loss before income taxes</strong></td>
<td>(3,048)</td>
<td>(4,418)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision for income taxes</td>
<td>(269)</td>
<td>(107)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Net loss</strong></td>
<td>$ (3,317)</td>
<td>$ (4,525)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Loss per common share:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic net loss per common share</td>
<td>$ (0.76)</td>
<td>$ (1.04)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diluted net loss per common share</td>
<td>$ (0.76)</td>
<td>$ (1.04)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weighted average common shares – Basic</strong></td>
<td>4,389,421</td>
<td>4,332,576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Diluted</td>
<td>4,389,421</td>
<td>4,332,576</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.
Sonic Foundry, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss
(in thousands)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Net loss</td>
<td>(3,317)</td>
<td>(4,525)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign currency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translation adjustment</td>
<td>939</td>
<td>(701)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Comprehensive loss</strong></td>
<td><strong>(2,378)</strong></td>
<td><strong>(5,226)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Common stock</th>
<th>Additional paid-in capital</th>
<th>Accumulated deficit</th>
<th>Accumulated other comprehensive loss</th>
<th>Receivable for common stock issued</th>
<th>Treasury stock</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Balance, September 30, 2014</strong></td>
<td>$43</td>
<td>$194,260</td>
<td>$(182,372)</td>
<td>$(421)</td>
<td>$11,315</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stock compensation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuance of common stock</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>709</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise of common stock options</td>
<td></td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign currency translation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$(701)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(701)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjustment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net loss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(4,525)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Balance, September 30, 2015</strong></td>
<td>$44</td>
<td>$195,973</td>
<td>$(186,897)</td>
<td>$(1,122)</td>
<td>$119</td>
<td>(169)</td>
<td>$7,803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stock compensation</td>
<td></td>
<td>847</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuance of common stock and warrants</td>
<td></td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise of common stock options</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign currency translation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>939</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjustment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net loss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(3,317)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Balance, September 30, 2016</strong></td>
<td>$44</td>
<td>$197,064</td>
<td>$(190,214)</td>
<td>$(183)</td>
<td>$119</td>
<td>(169)</td>
<td>$6,516</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.
### Sonic Foundry, Inc.
#### Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
##### (in thousands)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years Ended September 30,</th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operating activities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net loss</td>
<td>$(3,317)</td>
<td>$(4,525)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash provided by (used in) operating activities:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amortization of other intangibles</td>
<td>652</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depreciation and amortization of property and equipment</td>
<td>1,553</td>
<td>1,599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss on sale of fixed assets</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision for doubtful accounts</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deferred taxes</td>
<td>341</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stock-based compensation expense related to stock options and warrants</td>
<td>861</td>
<td>963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remeasurement gain on subordinated debt</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(202)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remeasurement gain on derivative liability</td>
<td>(58)</td>
<td>(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounts receivable</td>
<td>1,341</td>
<td>(4,379)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inventories</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>(344)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepaid expenses and other current assets</td>
<td>(532)</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounts payable and accrued liabilities</td>
<td>(966)</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other long-term liabilities</td>
<td>(60)</td>
<td>(86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unearned revenue</td>
<td>1,243</td>
<td>2,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities</strong></td>
<td>1,716</td>
<td>(3,126)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Investing activities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purchases of property and equipment</td>
<td>(339)</td>
<td>(722)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Net cash used in investing activities</strong></td>
<td>(339)</td>
<td>(722)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Financing activities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceeds from notes payable</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>2,336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceeds from line of credit</td>
<td>17,845</td>
<td>8,535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payments on notes payable</td>
<td>(1,693)</td>
<td>(2,894)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payments on line of credit</td>
<td>(17,958)</td>
<td>(6,727)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payment of debt issuance costs</td>
<td>(36)</td>
<td>(122)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceeds from issuance of common stock and warrants</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceeds from exercise of common stock options</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payments on capital lease and financing arrangements</td>
<td>(278)</td>
<td>(252)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities</strong></td>
<td>(1,554)</td>
<td>1,627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes in cash and cash equivalents due to changes in foreign currency</td>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>(147)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Net decrease in cash and cash equivalents</strong></td>
<td>(182)</td>
<td>(2,368)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period</td>
<td>1,976</td>
<td>4,344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cash and cash equivalents at end of period</strong></td>
<td>$1,794</td>
<td>$1,976</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Supplemental cash flow information:

- **Interest paid**: $529 (2016), $424 (2015)

### Non-cash financing and investing activities:

- **Property and equipment financed by capital lease or accounts payable**: 402 (2016), 292 (2015)
- **Debt discount**: 16 (2016), 179 (2015)
- **Stock issued for board of director's fees**: 164 (2016), — (2015)
- **Warrants issued for investor relations services**: 14 (2016), — (2015)

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.
1. Basis of Presentation and Significant Accounting Policies

Business

Sonic Foundry, Inc. (the Company) is in the business of providing enterprise solutions and services for the web communications market.

Principles of Consolidation

The accompanying consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly-owned subsidiaries, Sonic Foundry Media Systems, Inc., Sonic Foundry International B.V. (formerly Media Mission B.V.) and Mediasite K.K. All significant intercompany transactions and balances have been eliminated. The name change for the subsidiary formerly known as Media Mission B.V. occurred in October 2016.

Prior to January 2014, the Company owned approximately 26% of Mediasite KK and accounted for its investment under the equity method of accounting. On January 14, 2014, the Company purchased the remaining 74% of Mediasite KK.

Reclassifications

Reclassifications have been made to the September 30, 2015 financial statements to conform to the September 30, 2016 presentation. These reclassifications had no effect on the Company’s net loss or stockholders’ equity as previously reported.

Use of Estimates

In preparing financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (US GAAP), management is required to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expense during the period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Revenue Recognition

General

Revenue is recognized when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, delivery occurs or services are rendered, the sales price is fixed or determinable and collectability is reasonably assured. Revenue is deferred when undelivered products or services are essential to the functionality of delivered products, customer acceptance is uncertain, significant obligations remain, or the fair value of undelivered elements is unknown. Typically, the Company does not offer customers the right to return product, other than for exchange or repair pursuant to a warranty or stock rotation. The Company’s policy is to reduce revenue if it incurs an obligation for price rebates or other such programs during the period the obligation is reasonably estimated to occur. The following policies apply to the Company’s major categories of revenue transactions.

Products

Products are considered delivered, and revenue is recognized, when title and risk of loss have been transferred to the customer or upon customer acceptance if non-delivered products or services are essential to the functionality of delivered products. Under the terms and conditions of the sale, this occurs at the time of shipment to the customer. Product revenue currently represents sales of our Mediasite recorder and Mediasite related products such as our server software and other software licenses. If a license is time-based, the revenue is recognized over the term of the license agreement.
Services
The Company sells support and content hosting contracts to our customers, typically one year in length, and records the related revenue ratably over the contractual period. Our support contracts cover phone and electronic technical support availability over and above the level provided by our distributors, software upgrades on a when and if available basis, advance hardware replacement and an extension of the standard hardware warranty from 90 days to one year. The manufacturers the Company contracts with to build the units provide a limited one-year warranty on the hardware. The Company also sells installation, training, event webcasting, and customer content hosting services. Revenue for those services is recognized when performed in the case of installation, training and event webcasting services. Occasionally, the Company will sell customization services to enhance the server software. Revenue from those services is recognized when performed, if perfunctory, or under contract accounting. Service amounts invoiced to customers in excess of revenue recognized are recorded as deferred revenue until the revenue recognition criteria are met.

Revenue Arrangements that Include Multiple Elements
Sales of software, with or without installation, training, and post customer support fall within the scope of the software revenue recognition rules. Under the software revenue recognition rules, the fee from a multiple-deliverable arrangement is allocated to each of the undelivered elements based upon vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE), which is limited to the price charged when the same deliverable is sold separately, with the residual value from the arrangement allocated to the delivered element. The portion of the fee that is allocated to each deliverable is then recognized as revenue when the criteria for revenue recognition are met with respect to that deliverable. If VSOE does not exist for all of the undelivered elements, then all revenue from the arrangement is typically deferred until all elements have been delivered to the customer.

In the case of the Company’s hardware products with embedded software, the Company has determined that the hardware and software components function together to deliver the product’s essential functionality, and therefore, the revenue from the sale of these products is accounted for under the revenue recognition rules for tangible products whereby the fee from a multiple-deliverable arrangement is allocated to each of the deliverables based upon their relative selling prices as determined by a selling-price hierarchy. A deliverable in an arrangement qualifies as a separate unit of accounting if the delivered item has value to the customer on a stand-alone basis. A delivered item that does not qualify as a separate unit of accounting is combined with the other undelivered items in the arrangement and revenue is recognized for those combined deliverables as a single unit of accounting. The selling price used for each deliverable is based upon VSOE if available, from third-party evidence (TPE) if VSOE is not available, and best estimate of selling price (ESP) if neither VSOE nor TPE are available. TPE is the price of the Company’s or any competitor’s largely interchangeable products or services in stand-alone sales to similarly situated customers. ESP is the price at which the Company would sell the deliverable if it were sold regularly on a stand-alone basis, considering market conditions and entity-specific factors. All revenue arrangements, excluding the sale of all software-only products and associated services, have been accounted for under this guidance.

The selling prices used in the relative selling price allocation method are as follows: (1) the Company’s products and services are based upon VSOE and (2) hardware products with embedded software, for which VSOE does not exist, are based upon ESP. The Company does not believe TPE exists for any of these products and services because they are differentiated from competing products and services in terms of functionality and performance and there are no competing products or services that are largely interchangeable. Management establishes ESP for hardware products with embedded software using a cost plus margin approach with consideration for market conditions, such as the impact of competition and geographic considerations, and entity-specific factors, such as the cost of the product and the Company’s profit objectives. Management believes that ESP is reflective of reasonable pricing of that deliverable as if priced on a stand-alone basis. When a sales transaction includes deliverables that are divided between Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) Topic 605 and ASC Subtopic 985-605, the Company allocates the selling price using the relative selling price method whereas value is allocated using an ESP for software developed using a percent of list price approach. The other deliverables are valued using ESP or VSOE as previously discussed.
While the pricing model, currently in use, captures all critical variables, unforeseen changes due to external market forces may result in a revision of the inputs. These modifications may result in the consideration allocation differing from the one presently in use. Absent a significant change in the pricing inputs or the way in which the industry structures its transactions, future changes in the pricing model are not expected to materially affect our allocation of arrangement consideration.

Management has established VSOE for hosting services. Billings for hosting are spread ratably over the term of the hosting agreement, with the typical hosting agreement having a term of 1 year, with renewal on an annual basis. The Company sells most hosting contracts without the inclusion of products. When the hosting arrangement is sold in conjunction with product, the product revenue is recognized immediately while the remaining hosting revenue is spread ratably over the term of the hosting agreement. The selling price is allocated between these elements using the relative selling price method. The Company uses ESP for development of the selling price for hardware products with embedded software.

The Company also offers hosting services bundled with events services. The Company uses VSOE to establish relative selling prices for its events services. The Company recognizes events revenue when the event takes place and recognizes the hosting revenue over the term of the hosting agreement. The total amount of the arrangement is allocated to each element based on the relative selling price method.

Reserves
The Company reserves for stock rotations, price adjustments, rebates, and sales incentives to reduce revenue and accounts receivable for these and other credits granted to customers. Such reserves are recorded at the time of sale and are calculated based on historical information (such as rates of product stock rotations) and the specific terms of sales programs, taking into account any other known information about likely customer behavior. If actual customer behavior differs from our expectations, it may compromise our ability to recognize revenue to these distributors at the time of shipment. Also, if the Company determines that it can no longer accurately estimate amounts for stock rotations and sales incentives, the Company would not be able to recognize revenue until resellers sell the inventory to the final end user.

Shipping and Handling
The Company’s shipping and handling costs billed to customers are included in other revenue. Costs related to shipping and handling are included in cost of revenue and are recorded at the time of shipment to the customer.

Concentration of Credit Risk and Other Risks and Uncertainties
As of September 30, 2016, of the $1.8 million in cash and cash equivalents, $185 thousand is deposited with 2 major U.S. financial institutions. At times, deposits in these institutions exceed the amount of insurance provided on such deposits. The Company has not experienced any losses on such amounts and believes that it is not exposed to any significant credit risk on these balances. The remaining $1.6 million of cash and cash equivalents is held by our foreign subsidiaries in financial institutions in Japan and the Netherlands and held in their local currency. The cash held in foreign financial institutions is not guaranteed.

We assess the realization of our receivables by performing ongoing credit evaluations of our customers’ financial condition. Through these evaluations, we may become aware of a situation where a customer may not be able to meet its financial obligations due to deterioration of its financial viability, credit ratings or bankruptcy. Our reserve requirements are based on the best facts available to us and are reevaluated and adjusted as additional information is received. Our reserves are also based on amounts determined by using percentages applied to certain aged receivable categories. These percentages are determined by a variety of factors including, but not limited to, current economic trends, historical payment and bad debt write-off experience. Allowance for doubtful accounts for accounts receivable was $225,000 at September 30, 2016 and $150,000 at September 30, 2015.
We had billings for Mediasite product and support services as a percentage of total billings to one distributor of approximately 14% in 2016 and 10% in 2015 and to a second distributor of approximately 13% in 2016 and 12% in 2015. At September 30, 2016 and 2015, these two distributors represented 28% and 22% of total accounts receivable, respectively.

Currently all of our product inventory purchases are from one third-party contract manufacturer. Although we believe there are multiple sources of supply from other contract manufacturers as well as multiple suppliers of component parts required by the contract manufacturers, a disruption of supply of component parts or completed products, even if short term, would have a material negative impact on our revenues. At September 30, 2016 and 2015, this supplier represented 40% and 49%, respectively, of total accounts payable. We also license technology from third parties that is embedded in our software. We believe there are alternative sources of similar licensed technology from other third parties that we could also embed in our software, although it could create potential programming related issues that might require engineering resources.

**Cash and Cash Equivalents**

The Company considers all highly liquid investments purchased with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash equivalents. As of September 30, 2016, of the $1.8 million aggregate cash and cash equivalents held by the Company, the amount of cash and cash equivalents held by our foreign subsidiaries was $1.6 million. If the funds held by our foreign subsidiaries were needed for our operations in the United States, the repatriation of some of these funds to the United States could require payment of additional U.S. taxes.

**Trade Accounts Receivable**

The majority of the Company’s accounts receivable are due from entities in, or distributors or value added resellers to, the education, corporate and government sectors. Credit is extended based on evaluation of a customer’s financial condition and, generally, collateral is not required. Accounts receivable are typically due within 30 days and are stated at amounts due from customers net of an allowance for doubtful accounts. Accounts outstanding longer than the contractual payment terms are considered to be past due. The Company determines its allowance by considering a number of factors, including the length of time trade accounts receivable are past due, the Company’s previous loss history, the customer’s current ability to pay its obligation to the Company, and the condition of the general economy and the industry as a whole. The Company writes-off accounts receivable when they become uncollectible, and payments subsequently received on such receivables are credited to the allowance for doubtful accounts. Interest is not accrued on past due receivables.

**Inventory Valuation**

Inventory consists of raw materials and supplies used in the assembly of Mediasite recorders and finished units. Inventory of completed units and spare parts are carried at the lower of cost or market, with cost determined on a first-in, first-out basis.

Inventory consists of the following (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>September 30, 2016</th>
<th>September 30, 2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Raw materials and supplies</td>
<td>$149</td>
<td>$254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finished goods</td>
<td>$1,755</td>
<td>$2,131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>$1,904</strong></td>
<td><strong>$2,385</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Capitalized Software Development Costs**

Software development costs incurred in conjunction with product development are charged to research and development expense until technological feasibility is established. Thereafter, until the product is released for sale, software development costs are capitalized and reported at the net realizable value of the related product. Typically the period between achieving technological feasibility of the Company’s products and the general availability of the products has been short. Consequently, software
development costs qualifying for capitalization are typically immaterial and are generally expensed to research and development costs. During 2013, the Company’s My Mediasite product release required software capitalization since there was a longer period between technological feasibility and the general availability of the product. Upon product release, the amortization of software development costs is determined annually as the greater of the amount computed using the ratio of current gross revenues for the products to their total of current and anticipated future gross revenues or the straight-line method over the estimated economic life of the products, expected to be three years. Amortization expense of software development costs of $104 thousand and $178 thousand is included in Cost of Revenue – Product for each of the years ending September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively. The gross amount of capitalized external and internal development costs was $533 thousand at September 30, 2016 and 2015. There were no software development efforts that qualified for capitalization for the years ended September 30, 2016 or 2015, respectively.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment are recorded at cost and are depreciated using the straight-line method for financial reporting purposes. The estimated useful lives used to calculate depreciation are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Asset Type</th>
<th>Useful Life</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leasehold improvements</td>
<td>5 to 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer equipment</td>
<td>3 to 5 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furniture and fixtures</td>
<td>5 to 7 years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Impairment of Long-Lived Assets

Goodwill has an indefinite useful life and is recorded at cost and not amortized but, instead, tested at least annually for impairment. We assess the impairment of goodwill on an annual basis or whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the fair value of these assets is less than the carrying value. If a qualitative assessment is used and the Company determines that the fair value of goodwill is more likely than not (i.e., a likelihood of more than 50%) less than its carrying amount, a quantitative impairment test will be performed. If goodwill is quantitatively assessed for impairment, a two-step approach is applied. First, the Company compares the estimated fair value of the goodwill to its carrying value. The second step, if necessary, measures the amount of impairment, if any, by comparing the implied fair value of goodwill to its carrying value.

In fiscal 2016 and 2015, we performed the two-step goodwill test and determined that the fair value of goodwill is more than the carrying value. For purposes of the fiscal 2016 and 2015 tests, goodwill balances are evaluated within three separate reporting units. The Company has recognized no impairment charges as of September 30, 2016 or as of September 30, 2015.

If we had determined that the fair value of goodwill was less than its carrying value, based upon the annual test or the existence of one or more indicators of impairment, we would then measure impairment based on a comparison of the implied fair value of goodwill with the carrying amount of goodwill. To the extent the carrying amount of goodwill is greater than the implied fair value of goodwill, we would record an impairment charge for the difference.

Long-lived assets and intangible assets other than goodwill are evaluated for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying value of an asset may not be recoverable based on expected undiscounted cash flows attributable to that asset. For the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, no events or changes in circumstances occurred that required this analysis.

Comprehensive Loss

Comprehensive loss includes disclosure of financial information that historically has not been recognized in the calculation of net income. Our comprehensive loss encompasses net loss and foreign currency translation adjustments. Assets and liabilities of international operations that have a functional currency that is not in U.S. dollars are translated into U.S. dollars at year-end.
exchange rates, and revenue and expense items are translated using weighted average exchange rates. Any adjustments arising on translation are included in shareholders’ equity as an element of accumulated other comprehensive loss.

**Advertising Expense**

Advertising costs included in selling and marketing, are expensed when the advertising first takes place. Advertising expense was $403 thousand and $655 thousand for years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

**Research and Development Costs**

Research and development costs are expensed in the period incurred, unless they meet the criteria for capitalized software development costs.

**Income Taxes**

Deferred tax assets and liabilities are determined based on differences between the financial statement and tax bases of assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates in effect in the years in which the differences are expected to reverse. We do not provide for U.S. income taxes on the undistributed earnings of our foreign subsidiaries, which we consider to be permanently invested outside of the U.S.

We make judgments regarding the realizability of our deferred tax assets. The balance sheet carrying value of our net deferred tax assets is based on whether we believe that it is more likely than not that we will generate sufficient future taxable income to realize these deferred tax assets after consideration of all available evidence. We regularly review our deferred tax assets for recoverability considering historical profitability, projected future taxable income, the expected timing of the reversals of existing temporary differences and tax planning strategies. In assessing the need for a valuation allowance, we consider both positive and negative evidence related to the likelihood of realization of the deferred tax assets. The weight given to the positive and negative evidence is commensurate with the extent to which the evidence may be objectively verified. As such, it is generally difficult for positive evidence regarding projected future taxable income exclusive of reversing taxable temporary differences to outweigh objective negative evidence of recent financial reporting losses. Generally, cumulative loss in recent years is a significant piece of negative evidence that is difficult to overcome in determining that a valuation allowance is not needed.

As of September 30, 2016 and 2015, valuation allowances have been established for all U.S. and for certain foreign deferred tax assets which we believe do not meet the “more likely than not” criteria for recognition.

The Company also accounts for the uncertainty in income taxes related to the recognition and measurement of a tax position and measurement of a tax position taken or expected to be taken in an income tax return. The Company follows the applicable accounting guidance on derecognition, classification, interest and penalties, accounting in interim periods and disclosure related to the uncertainty in income tax positions.

**Fair Value of Financial Instruments**

Nonfinancial Assets Measured at Fair Value on a Nonrecurring Basis

The Company’s goodwill, intangible assets and other long-lived assets are nonfinancial assets that were acquired either as part of a business combination, individually or with a group of other assets. These nonfinancial assets were initially measured and recognized at amounts equal to the fair value determined as of the date of acquisition. Fair value measurements of reporting units are estimated using an income approach involving discounted or undiscounted cash flow models that contain certain Level 3 inputs requiring management judgment, including projections of economic conditions and customer demand, revenue and margins, changes in competition, operating costs, working capital requirements, and new product introductions. Fair value measurements of the reporting units associated with the Company’s goodwill balances are estimated at least annually at the beginning of the fourth quarter of each fiscal year for purposes of impairment testing. Fair value measurements associated with
the Company’s intangible assets and other long-lived assets are estimated when events or changes in circumstances such as market value, asset utilization, physical change, legal factors, or other matters indicate that the carrying value may not be recoverable.

In determining the fair value of financial assets and liabilities, the Company currently utilizes market data or other assumptions that it believes market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability in the principal or most advantageous market, and adjusts for non-performance and/or other risk associated with the Company as well as counterparties, as appropriate. When considering market participant assumptions in fair value measurements, the following fair value hierarchy distinguishes between observable and unobservable inputs, which are categorized in one of the following levels:

- **Level 1 Inputs**: Unadjusted quoted prices which are available in active markets for identical assets or liabilities accessible to the Company at the measurement date.
- **Level 2 Inputs**: Inputs other than quoted prices included in Level 1 inputs that are observable for the asset or liability, either directly or indirectly, for substantially the full term of the asset or liability.
- **Level 3 Inputs**: Unobservable inputs for the asset or liability used to measure fair value to the extent that observable inputs are not available, thereby allowing for situations in which there is little, if any, market activity for the asset or liability at measurement date.

The hierarchy gives the highest priority to Level 1, as this level provides the most reliable measure of fair value, while giving the lowest priority to Level 3.

**Financial Liabilities Measured at Fair Value on a Recurring Basis**

The initial fair values of PFG debt and warrant debt (see Note 3) were based on the present value of expected future cash flows and assumptions about current interest rates and the creditworthiness of the Company (Level 3). The fair value of the bifurcated conversion feature represented by the warrant derivative liability, which is measured at fair value on a recurring basis is based on a Black Scholes option pricing model with assumptions for stock price, exercise price, volatility, expected term, risk free interest rate and dividend yield similar to those described for share-based compensation which were generally observable (Level 2).

Financial liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis are summarized below (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Level 1</th>
<th>Level 2</th>
<th>Level 3</th>
<th>Total Fair Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>September 30, 2016</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivative liability</td>
<td>$ —</td>
<td>$ 67</td>
<td>$ —</td>
<td>$ 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>September 30, 2015</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFG debt, net of discount</td>
<td>$ —</td>
<td>$ —</td>
<td>$ 1,347</td>
<td>$ 1,347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warrant debt</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivative liability</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>$ —</td>
<td>$ 109</td>
<td>$ 1,410</td>
<td>$ 1,519</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Included below is a summary of the changes in our Level 3 fair value measurements (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PFG Debt, net of discount</th>
<th>Warrant Debt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Balance as of September 30, 2015</td>
<td>$ 1,347</td>
<td>$ 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity during the period:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disbursement of Tranche 2, net of discount</td>
<td>462</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payments to PFG</td>
<td>(655)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change in fair value</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Balance as of September 30, 2016</strong></td>
<td>$ 1,225</td>
<td>$ 102</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Financial Instruments Not Measured at Fair Value

The Company’s other financial instruments consist primarily of cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable, accounts payable and debt instruments, excluding the PFG debt. The book values of cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable, debt (excluding the PFG debt) and accounts payable are considered to be representative of their respective fair values. The carrying value of capital lease obligations and debt (excluding the PFG debt), including the current portion, approximates fair market value as the variable and fixed rate approximates the current market rate of interest available to the Company.

Legal Contingencies

In June 2014, the Company entered into a settlement agreement with Astute Technology, LLC (“Astute”). The key terms of the agreement were: 1) a grant of a non-revocable license of Astute patents to the Company; 2) a grant of a fully paid, non-refundable license of certain Sonic Foundry patents to Astute; 3) both Astute and our customer agreed to identify three meetings they currently capture that the other party will not seek or respond to any request for proposal; and 4) a payment of $1.35 million to Astute. Pursuant to the settlement agreement, the payments were made in three equal amounts with the first paid in June 2014, the second paid in October 2014 and the final installment paid in March 2015. The Company contributed $1.1 million of the $1.35 million payable to Astute with our customer paying the residual amount. Of the $1.1 million, $428 thousand related to prior use and was recorded as a charge to income during fiscal 2014. The remaining $672 thousand was recorded as a product right asset, which is being amortized, on a straight-line basis, over the remaining life of the patents, through 2020. Future amounts due to Astute were accrued for as of the time of settlement.

No legal contingencies were recorded for the either of the years ended September 30, 2016 or 2015, respectively.

Stock-Based Compensation

The Company uses a lattice valuation model to account for all employee stock options granted. The lattice valuation model is a more flexible analysis to value options because of its ability to incorporate inputs that change over time, such as actual exercise behavior of option holders. The Company uses historical data to estimate the option exercise and employee departure behavior in the lattice valuation model. Expected volatility is based on historical volatility of the Company’s stock. The Company considers all employees to have similar exercise behavior and therefore has not identified separate homogeneous groups for valuation. The expected term of options granted is derived from the output of the option pricing model and represents the period of time that options granted are expected to be outstanding. The risk-free rate for periods the options are expected to be outstanding is based on the U.S. Treasury yields in effect at the time of grant. Forfeitures are based on actual behavior patterns. The expected exercise factor and forfeiture rates are calculated using historical exercise and forfeiture activity for the previous three years.

The fair value of each option grant is estimated using the assumptions in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Years Ending September 30,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expected life</td>
<td>4.9 – 5.0 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk-free interest rate</td>
<td>0.84%-1.23%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expected volatility</td>
<td>53.8%-57.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expected forfeiture rate</td>
<td>10.3 %-11.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expected exercise factor</td>
<td>1.35-1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expected dividend yield</td>
<td>—%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common Stock Warrants

On December 22, 2014, the company issued 74,802 warrants to two individuals, one of which is the Chairman of the Company’s Board of Directors, in combination with the sale of a like number of shares of common stock. These warrants were immediately exercisable, expire five years after the date of issuance and have an exercise price of $14.00. The remaining contractual life of
these outstanding warrants as of September 30, 2016 was 3.23 years. The fair value of the warrants was determined using the lattice model and the same inputs as those used for valuing the Company’s stock option fair value. The fair value of the warrants was $133 thousand at the date of issuance. The Company determined that the warrants are freestanding and do not fall within the scope of ASC 480 or ASC 815. The warrants were recorded in conjunction with the stock issued.

See Note 3, Credit Arrangements for disclosures on additional warrants issued during fiscal 2015.

**Per Share Computation**

Basic earnings (loss) per share has been computed using the weighted-average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the period, less shares that may be repurchased, and excludes any dilutive effects of options and warrants. In periods where the Company reports net income, diluted net income per share is computed using common equivalent shares related to outstanding options and warrants to purchase common stock. The numerator for the calculation of basic and diluted earnings per share is net income (loss). The following table sets forth the computation of basic and diluted weighted average shares used in the earnings per share calculations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years Ending September 30,</th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Denominator for basic earnings (loss) per share -weighted average common shares</td>
<td>4,389,421</td>
<td>4,332,576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effect of dilutive options and warrants (treasury method)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denominator for diluted earnings (loss) per share -adjusted weighted average common shares</td>
<td>4,389,421</td>
<td>4,332,576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Options and warrants outstanding during each year, but not included in the computation of diluted earnings (loss) per share because they are antidilutive</td>
<td>1,737,624</td>
<td>1,560,211</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

In May 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (the "FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") 2014-09, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)"). The guidance substantially converges final standards on revenue recognition between the FASB and the International Accounting Standards Board providing a framework on addressing revenue recognition issues and, upon its effective date, replaces almost all existing revenue recognition guidance, including industry-specific guidance, in current U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. The FASB subsequently issued a one-year deferral of the effective date for the new revenue reporting standard for entities reporting under U.S. GAAP. In accordance with the deferral, the guidance is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017. Subsequently, the FASB issued ASU 2016-08, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Principal versus Agent Considerations" ("ASU 2016-08"); ASU 2016-10, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Identifying Performance Obligations and Licensing" ("ASU 2016-10"); and ASU 2016-12, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606): Narrow-Trace Improvements and Practical Expedients" ("ASU 2016-12"). The Company must adopt ASU 2016-08, ASU 2016-10 and ASU 2016-12 with ASU 2014-09. We are currently evaluating the timing of adopting and the related impact, if any, it may have on our financial statements.

In April 2015, the FASB issued ASU 2015-03, “Simplifying the Presentation of Debt Issuance Costs” ("ASU 2015-03"), which amends the current presentation of debt issuance costs in the financial statements. ASU 2015-03 requires that debt issuance costs related to a recognized debt liability be presented in the balance sheet as a direct deduction from the carrying amount of that debt liability, consistent with debt discounts, instead of as an asset. The amendments are to be applied retrospectively and are effective for public business entities for fiscal years, and for interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2015, but early adoption is permitted. The adoption of the new guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company’s condensed consolidated financial statements.
In April 2015, the FASB issued ASU 2015-05, “Intangibles-Goodwill and Other-Internal-Use Software (Subtopic 350-40): Customer’s Accounting for Fees Paid in a Cloud Computing Arrangement” (“ASU 2015-05”). The amendments in ASU 2015-05 provide guidance to customers about whether a cloud computing arrangement includes a software license. The amendments in ASU 2015-05 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2015, and interim periods within those years. Early adoption is permitted. The guidance may be applied either prospectively to all arrangements entered into or materially modified after the effective date or retrospectively. The Company does not believe the implementation of this standard will result in a material impact to its financial statements.

In July 2015, the FASB issued ASU 2015-11, "Inventory (Topic 330)" (“ASU 2015-11”). The amendments in ASU 2015-11 require an entity to measure inventory at the lower of cost and net realizable value. The amendments in ASU 2015-11 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016 and interim periods within those years. Early adoption is permitted. The amendments should be applied prospectively with earlier application permitted as of the beginning of an interim or annual reporting period. The Company does not believe the implementation of this standard will result in a material impact to its financial statements.

In September 2015, the FASB issued ASU 2015-16, "Business Combinations (Topic 805)" (“ASU 2015-16”). ASU 2015-16 simplifies the accounting for measurement-period adjustments. The amendments in ASU 2015-16 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2015, including interim periods within those fiscal years. The amendments should be applied prospectively to adjustments to provisional amounts that occur after the effective date of the ASU with earlier application permitted for financial statements that have not been issued. The Company is currently evaluating this guidance, but it does not have an impact on previous acquisitions.

In November 2015, the FASB issued ASU 2015-17, "Income Taxes (Topic 740)", (“ASU 2015-17”). ASU 2015-17 simplifies the presentation of deferred income taxes. The amendments in ASU 2015-17 are effective for financial statements issued for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2016, including interims periods within those annual periods. The amendments may be applied either prospectively to all deferred tax liabilities and assets or retrospectively to all periods presented. The Company does not believe the implementation of this standard will result in a material impact to its financial statements.

In January 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-01, "Financial Instruments - Overall (Subtopic 825-10)", ("ASU 2016-01"). ASU 2016-01 addresses certain aspects of recognition, measurement, presentation, and disclosure of financial instruments. The amendments in ASU 2016-01 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim periods within those fiscal years. The amendments should be applied by means of a cumulative-effect adjustment to the balance sheet as of the beginning of the fiscal year of adoption. The amendments related to equity securities without readily determinable fair values should be applied prospectively to equity investments that exist at the date of the adoption. The Company is currently evaluating this guidance and its impact to the financial statements.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, "Leases (Topic 842)", ("ASU 2016-02"). ASU 2016-02 aims to increase transparency and comparability among organizations by recognizing lease assets and lease liabilities on the balance sheet and disclosing key information about leasing arrangements. The amendments in ASU 2016-02 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, including interim periods within those fiscal years, for public entities. Early application of the amendment is permitted. The Company is currently reviewing this guidance and its impact to the financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-05, "Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815)", ("ASU 2016-05"). ASU 2016-05 clarifies the effect of novation related to a derivative instrument. The amendments in ASU 2016-05 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within those fiscal years. An entity has the option to apply the amendments in ASU 2016-05 on either a prospective or a modified retrospective basis. The Company is currently evaluating this guidance and its impact to the financial statements.
In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-06, "Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815)", ("ASU 2016-06"). ASU 2016-06 clarify the requirements for assessing whether contingent call (put) options that can accelerate the payment of principal on debt instruments are clearly and closely related to their debt hosts. The amendments in ASU 2016-06 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within those fiscal years. Entities should apply the amendments on a modified retrospective basis to existing debt instruments as of the beginning of the fiscal year for which the amendments are effective. The Company is currently evaluating this guidance and its impact to the financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-09, "Compensation-Stock Compensation (Topic 718)", ("ASU 2016-09"). ASU 2016-09 simplifies the accounting for share-based payment transactions. The amendments in ASU 2016-09 are effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within those annual periods. The Company is currently evaluating this guidance and its impact to the financial statements.

In May 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-11, "Revenue Recognition (Topic 605) and Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815)", ("ASU 2016-11"). ASU 2016-11 rescinds SEC paragraphs pursuant to the SEC Staff Announcement, "Rescission of Certain SEC Staff Observer Comments upon Adoption of Topic 606", and the SEC Staff Announcement, "Determining Whether the Host Contract in a Hybrid Financial Instrument Issued in the Form of a Share is More Akin to Debt or Equity", announced at the March 3, 2016 Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF) meeting. The effective dates in ASU 2016-11 coincide with the effective dates of Topic 606 (ASU 2014-09) and ASU 2014-16. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of adopting ASU 2014-09 and related amendments, such as ASU 2016-11, to determine the impact, if any, it may have on our financial statements. The Company previously reviewed ASU 2014-16 and determined that is it not applicable.


In October 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-16, "Income Taxes (Topic 740)", ("ASU 2016-16"). ASU 2016-16 prohibits the recognition of current and deferred income taxes for an intra-entity transfer until the asset has been sold to an outside party. The amendment in ASU 2016-16 are effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim reporting periods within those annual reporting periods. The Company is currently evaluating this guidance and its impact to the financial statements.

Accounting standards that have been issued but are not yet effective by the FASB or other standards-setting bodies that do not require adoption until a future date, which are not discussed above, are not expected to have a material impact on the Company’s financial statements upon adoption.
2. Commitments

The Company leases certain equipment under capital lease and financing agreements expiring through January 2022. Such leases are included in fixed assets with a cost of $1.3 million and accumulated depreciation of $827 thousand at September 30, 2016. Minimum lease payments, including principal and interest, are summarized in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fiscal Year (in thousands)</th>
<th>Capital</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>$307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2020</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2021</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thereafter</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total payments</td>
<td>551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less interest</td>
<td>(37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$514</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Company leases certain facilities and equipment under operating lease agreements expiring at various times through December 31, 2020. Total rent expense on all operating leases was approximately $1.6 million and $1.1 million for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

In November 2011, the Company occupied office space related to a lease agreement entered into on June 28, 2011. The lease term is from November 2011 through December 2018. The lease includes a tenant improvement allowance of $613 thousand that was recorded as a leasehold improvement liability and is being amortized as a credit to rent expense on a straight-line basis over the lease term. At September 30, 2016, the unamortized balance was $182 thousand.

The following is a schedule by year of future minimum lease payments under operating leases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fiscal Year (in thousands)</th>
<th>Operating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>$1,341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>1,287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2020</td>
<td>526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2021</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thereafter</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$4,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Company enters into unconditional purchase commitments on a regular basis for the supply of Mediasite product. At September 30, 2016, the Company has an obligation to purchase $782 thousand of Mediasite product, which is not recorded on the Company’s Consolidated Balance Sheet.

The Company enters into license agreements that generally provide indemnification against intellectual property claims for its customers as well as indemnification agreements with certain service providers, landlords and other parties in the normal course of business. The Company has not incurred any material costs as a result of such indemnifications, or accrued any liabilities related to such obligations in the consolidated financial statements, except as noted above related to Astute (Note 1).
3. Credit Arrangements

Silicon Valley Bank

The Company and its wholly owned subsidiary, Sonic Foundry Media Systems, Inc. (the “Companies”) entered into that certain Second Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement with Silicon Valley Bank, dated as of June 27, 2011, as amended by those certain First, Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth Amendments, dated as of May 31, 2013, January 10, 2014, March 31, 2014, January 27, 2015, and May 13, 2015 (the Second Amended and Restated Loan Agreement, as amended by the First, Second, Third, Fourth and Fifth Amendments, collectively, the “Second Amended and Restated Loan Agreement”). The Second Amended and Restated Loan Agreement provides for a revolving line of credit in the maximum principal amount of $4,000,000. Interest accrues on the revolving line of credit at the variable per annum rate equal to the Prime Rate (as defined) plus one and-one quarter percent (1.25%) which currently equates to 4.75%. The Second Amended and Restated Loan Agreement provides for an advance rate on domestic receivables of 80%, and an advance rate on foreign receivables of 75% of the lesser of (x) Foreign Eligible Accounts (as defined) or (y) $1,000,000. The maturity date of the revolving credit facility is January 31, 2017. Under the Second Amended and Restated Loan Agreement, a term loan was entered into on January 27, 2015 in the original principal amount of $2,500,000 which accrues interest at the variable per annum rate equal to the Prime Rate (as defined) plus two and three-quarters percent (2.75%) (which currently equates to an interest rate of 6.25%) and is to be repaid in 36 equal monthly principal payments, beginning in February 2015. The Second Amended and Restated Loan Agreement also required Sonic Foundry to comply with certain financial covenants, including (i) a liquidity financial covenant, which required minimum Liquidity (as defined), tested with respect to the Company only (excluding the subsidiaries) of at least (x) 1.35:1.00 for each month-end that was not the last day of a fiscal quarter, and (y) 1.50:1.00 for each month-end that was the last day of a fiscal quarter, and (ii) a covenant that required the Debt Service Coverage Ratio (as defined) to be at or greater than 1.0:1 for the quarter ending June 30, 2015, 1.25:1 for the quarter ending September 30, 2015 and 1.50:1 for the quarter ending December 31, 2015 and thereafter (with the change in the deferred revenue included in the numerator of the ratio).

On October 5, 2015, the Companies entered into a Sixth Amendment to the Second Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement (the “Sixth Amendment”), with Silicon Valley Bank. Under the Sixth Amendment: (i) the Liquidity covenant was modified to require minimum Liquidity (as defined) with respect to the Company only, on a monthly basis, of at least 1.5:1.0 at the last day of each month, replacing the previous Liquidity requirement of 1.35:1.0 for each month-end that is not the last day of a fiscal quarter, and 1.5:1.0 for each month-end that is the last day of a fiscal quarter, and (ii) a covenant that required the Debt Service Coverage Ratio (as defined) to be at or greater than 1.0:1 for the quarter ending June 30, 2015, 1.25:1 for the quarter ending September 30, 2015 and 1.50:1 for the quarter ending December 31, 2015 and thereafter (with the change in the deferred revenue included in the numerator of the ratio).

On February 8, 2016, the Companies entered into a Seventh Amendment to the Second Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement (the "Seventh Amendment") with Silicon Valley Bank. The Seventh Amendment: (i) waived existing default under the Second Amended Agreement by virtue of the Company's failure to comply with the minimum EBITDA financial covenant for the compliance period ended December 31, 2015 and (ii) updated the definition of eligible foreign accounts to include additional countries.

On December 9, 2016, the Companies entered into an Eighth Amendment to the Second Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement (the "Eighth Amendment") with Silicon Valley Bank. The Eighth Amendment: (i) extends the revolving line of credit maturity date to January 31, 2019, (ii) increases maximum subsidiary indebtedness allowable to $1,000,000 outstanding at any one time and (iii) provides for a "streamline period", during which bank reporting is due monthly when a streamline period is in effect and weekly when a streamline period is not in effect.

At September 30, 2016, a balance of $1.1 million was outstanding on the term loans with Silicon Valley Bank, with an effective interest rate of six-and-one-quarter percent (6.25%). At September 30, 2016, a balance of $1.6 million was outstanding on the revolving line of credit with Silicon Valley Bank, with an effective interest rate of four-and-three-quarters percent (4.75%). At
September 30, 2015, a balance of $1.9 million was outstanding on the term loans with Silicon Valley Bank and a balance of $1.4 million was outstanding on the revolving line of credit. At September 30, 2016, there was a remaining amount of $2.3 million available under the line of credit facility for advances.

The Second Amended Agreement, as amended, contains events of default that include, among others, non-payment of principal or interest, inaccuracy of any representation or warranty, violation of covenants, bankruptcy and insolvency events, material judgments, cross defaults to certain other indebtedness, and material adverse changes. The occurrence of an event of default could result in the acceleration of the Companies’ obligations under the Second Amended Agreement, as amended. At September 30, 2016, the Company was in compliance with all covenants in the Second Amended Agreement, as amended.

Pursuant to the Second Amended Agreement, as amended, the Companies pledged as collateral to Silicon Valley Bank substantially all non-intellectual property business assets. The Companies also entered into an Intellectual Property Security Agreement with respect to intellectual property assets.

Partners for Growth IV, L.P.


The Loan and Security Agreement provides for a Term Loan in the amount of $2,000,000, which can be disbursed in two (2) Tranches as follows: Tranche 1 was drawn in the amount of $1,500,000 shortly after execution thereof; and Tranche 2 in the amount of $500,000, was drawn on December 15, 2015.

Each tranche of the Term Loan bears interest at 10.75% per annum. Tranche 1 of the Term Loan was payable interest only until November 30, 2015. Beginning on December 1, 2015, principal is due in 30 equal monthly principal installments, plus accrued interest, continuing until May 1, 2018, when the principal balance is to be paid in full. Tranche 2 of the Term Loan is payable in 29 equal monthly principal installments, plus accrued interest, beginning January 1, 2015 and continuing until May 1, 2018.

The principal of the Term Loan may be prepaid at any time after May 13, 2016 without a prepayment fee.

Coincident with execution of the Loan and Security Agreement, the Company entered into a Warrant Agreement (“Warrant”) with PFG. Pursuant to the terms of the Warrant, the Company issued to PFG a warrant to purchase up to 50,000 shares of common stock of the Company at an exercise price of $9.66 per share, subject to certain adjustments, of which 37,500 were exercisable with the disbursement of Tranche 1 and 12,500 became exercisable with the disbursement under Tranche 2. Pursuant to the Warrant, PFG is also entitled, under certain conditions, to require the Company to exchange the Warrant for the sum of $200,000. Each warrant issued has an exercise term of 5 years from the date of issuance. On August 12, 2015, the Company and PFG entered into a waiver agreement to waive a then existing covenant default and to change the exercise price of the aforementioned warrants from $9.66 per share to $6.80 per share.

The warrants can be settled for cash in the event of acquisition of the company, any liquidation of the company, or expiration of the warrant. The Company has determined the cash payment date to be the expiration date (May 14, 2020). Due to the fixed payment amount on the expiration date, the warrant structure is in substance a debt arrangement (the “Warrant Debt”) with a zero interest rate, a fixed maturity date and a feature that makes the debt convertible to common stock. The Warrant Debt had a fair value of $58 thousand. The derivative had a fair value of $120 thousand. The conversion feature is an embedded derivative; thus, for accounting purposes, the conversion feature is bifurcated and accounted for separately from the PFG Debt and Warrant Debt as a derivative liability measured at fair value at each reporting period.

As of September 30, 2016, the estimated fair value of the derivative liability associated with the warrants issued in connection with the Loan and Security Agreement, was $67 thousand. The change in the fair value of the derivative liability between the issuance date and September 30, 2016, was recorded as a gain of $69 thousand included in the other income (expense).
The proceeds from the Loan and Security Agreement were allocated between the PFG Debt and the Warrant Debt (inclusive of its conversion feature) based on their relative fair value on the date of issuance which resulted in initial carrying values of $1.322 million and $178 thousand, respectively. The conversion feature of $178 thousand is treated together as a debt discount on the PFG Debt and will be accreted to interest expense under the effective interest method over the three-year term of the PFG Debt and the five-year term of the Warrant Debt. For fiscal 2016, the Company recorded accretion of discount expenses associated with the warrants issued with the PFG loan of $17 thousand as well as $71 thousand related to amortization of the debt discount. For fiscal 2015, the Company recorded accretion of discount expense associated with the warrants issued with the PFG loan of $5 thousand as well as $22 thousand related to amortization of the debt discount.

The fair values of term debt and warrant debt are based on the present value of expected future cash flows and assumptions about current interest rates and the creditworthiness of the Company (Level 3). At December 14, 2015, the carrying amounts of the Company’s term debt and warrant debt totaled $1.322 million and $178 thousand, respectively. At December 14, 2015, the Company’s term debt and warrant debt were recorded at fair value. At September 30, 2016, the derivative liability was remeasured at fair value. The fair value of the bifurcated conversion feature represented by the warrant derivative liability is based on a Black Scholes option pricing model with assumptions for stock price, exercise price, volatility, expected term, risk free interest rate and dividend yield similar to those described previously for share-based compensation which were generally observable (Level 2).

On October 5, 2015, the Company and PFG entered into a Modification No. 1 to the Loan and Security Agreement (“Modification No. 1”). Under Modification No. 1: (i) the Liquidity covenant was modified to require minimum Liquidity (as defined) with respect to the Company only, on a monthly basis, of at least 1.5:1.0 at the last day of each month, replacing the previous Liquidity requirement of 1.35:1.0 for each month-end that is not the last day of a fiscal quarter, and 1.5:1.0 for each month-end that is the last day of a fiscal quarter, and (ii) the Minimum Debt Service covenant was replaced with a requirement to maintain, commencing September 30, 2015, a Minimum EBITDA, as defined, on a trailing six month period, of at least $1.00 plus the net change in Deferred Revenue, as defined, with such covenant measured as of the last day of each fiscal quarter.

At September 30, 2016, a balance of $1.3 million was outstanding on the term debt with PFG, with an effective interest rate of ten-and-three-quarters percent (10.75%). At September 30, 2015, a balance of $1.5 million with outstanding on the term debt with PFG.

The Term Loan is collateralized by substantially all the Company’s assets, including intellectual property, subject to a first lien held by Silicon Valley Bank. The Term Loan requires compliance with the same financial covenants as set forth in the loan from Silicon Valley Bank. At September 30, 2016, the Company was in compliance with all covenants in the Loan and Security Agreement, as amended.

Other Indebtedness

At September 30, 2016, no balance was outstanding on the notes payable to Mitsui Sumitomo Bank. The outstanding balance was $25 thousand at September 30, 2015. At September 30, 2016, a balance of $198 thousand was outstanding on the line of credit with Mitsui Sumitomo Bank. At September 30, 2015, a balance of $418 thousand was outstanding on the line of credit. The notes and credit facility are both related to Mediasite K.K., and both accrue an annual interest rate of approximately one-and-one half percent (1.575%).

At September 30, 2016, a balance of $93 thousand was outstanding on the subordinated note payable related to the acquisition of Sonic Foundry International, with an annual interest rate of six-and-one half percent (6.5%). The outstanding balance was $278 thousand at September 30, 2015.

At September 30, 2016 and 2015, no balance was outstanding on the subordinated payable related to the acquisition of Mediasite KK after paying off the outstanding balance in January 2015.
In the twelve months ended September 30, 2016, a foreign currency gain of $3 thousand was realized related to re-measurement of the subordinated notes payable related to the Company’s foreign subsidiaries. In the twelve months ended September 30, 2015, a foreign currency gain of $202 thousand was recorded related to the remeasurement.

The annual principal payments on the notes payable to SVB and PFG are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fiscal Year (in thousands)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>$ 1,640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>816</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less warrant debt &amp; discount</td>
<td>(18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$ 2,438</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The annual principal payments on the subordinated notes payable related to the acquisition of Sonic Foundry International are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fiscal Year (in thousands)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>$ 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$ 93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Accrued Liabilities

Accrued liabilities consists of the following (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>September 30,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accrued compensation</td>
<td>$ 1,258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accrued expenses</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accrued interest &amp; taxes</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other accrued liabilities</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$ 1,883</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Company accrues expenses as they are incurred. Accrued compensation includes wages, vacation, commissions and bonuses. Accrued expenses is mainly related to stock compensation, professional fees and amounts owed to suppliers. Other accrued liabilities is made up of employee-related expenses. At September 30, 2015, other accrued liabilities included $87 thousand in dividends payable to the sellers and current employees of its wholly owned subsidiary, Sonic Foundry International B.V. These amounts were accrued prior to the Company’s acquisition. At September 30, 2016, no balance was outstanding as the dividends were paid in full in fiscal 2016.

5. Stock Options and Employee Stock Purchase Plan

On March 5, 2009, Stockholders approved adoption of the 2009 Stock Incentive Plan (the “2009 Plan”). The 2009 Plan, beginning October 1, 2009, replaced two former employee stock option plans that terminated coincident with the effectiveness of the 2009 Plan. On March 7, 2012, Stockholders approved an amendment to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to this plan by 600,000 and to increase the number of shares for the directors’ stock option plan by 50,000 shares. On March 6, 2014, Stockholders approved an amendment to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the 2009 Plan by 800,000 to an aggregated total of 1,800,000 shares of common stock. The Company maintains a directors’ stock option plan under which options may be issued to purchase up to an aggregate of 100,000 shares of common stock. Each non-employee director, who is re-elected or who continues as a member of the board of directors on each annual meeting date and on each subsequent meeting
of Stockholders, will be granted options to purchase 2,000 shares of common stock under the directors’ plan, or at other times or amounts at the discretion of the Board of Directors.

Each option entitles the holder to purchase one share of common stock at the specified option price. The exercise price of each option granted under the plans was set at the fair market value of the Company’s common stock at the respective grant date. Options vest at various intervals and expire at the earlier of termination of employment, discontinuance of service on the board of directors, ten years from the grant date or at such times as are set by the Company at the date of grant.

The Company has applied a graded (tranche-by-tranche) attribution method and expenses share-based compensation on an accelerated basis over the vesting period of the share award, net of estimated forfeitures.

The number of shares available for grant under these stockholder approved plans at September 30, is as follows:

| Shares available for grant at September 30, 2014 | 853,766 | 19,500 |
| Options granted                         | (307,119) | (10,500) |
| Options forfeited                          | 39,384 | 8,000 |
| Shares available for grant at September 30, 2015 | 586,031 | 17,000 |
| Options granted                         | (233,381) | (10,500) |
| Options forfeited                          | 14,239 | — |
| Shares available for grant at September 30, 2016 | 366,889 | 6,500 |

The following table summarizes information with respect to outstanding stock options under all plans:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years Ended September 30,</th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Options</td>
<td>Weighted Average Exercise Price</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outstanding at beginning of year</td>
<td>1,449,409</td>
<td>$10.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granted</td>
<td>243,881</td>
<td>7.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercised</td>
<td>(2,968)</td>
<td>6.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forfeited</td>
<td>(87,500)</td>
<td>11.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outstanding at end of year</td>
<td>1,602,822</td>
<td>$9.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercisable at end of year</td>
<td>1,062,837</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighted average fair value of options granted during the year</td>
<td>$2.62</td>
<td>$3.18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The options outstanding at September 30, 2016 have been segregated into three ranges for additional disclosure as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise Prices</th>
<th>Options Outstanding at September 30, 2016</th>
<th>Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Life</th>
<th>Options Exercisable at September 30, 2016</th>
<th>Weighted Average Exercise Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$4.50 to $9.87</td>
<td>1,245,264</td>
<td>6.70</td>
<td>773,336</td>
<td>8.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.00 to 15.50</td>
<td>330,900</td>
<td>5.49</td>
<td>262,843</td>
<td>12.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.40 to 46.90</td>
<td>26,658</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>26,658</td>
<td>37.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,602,822</strong></td>
<td><strong>37.18</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,062,837</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As of September 30, 2016, there was $696 thousand of total unrecognized compensation cost related to non-vested stock-based compensation, with total forfeiture adjusted unrecognized compensation costs of $562 thousand. The cost is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average life of 1.6 years.

A summary of the status of the Company’s non-vested shares under all plans at September 30, 2016 and for the year then ended is presented below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shares</th>
<th>Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-vested shares at October 1, 2015</td>
<td>563,632 $ 4.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granted</td>
<td>243,881 2.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vested</td>
<td>(253,304) 3.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forfeited</td>
<td>(14,224) 3.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-vested shares at September 30, 2016</td>
<td>539,985 $ 3.21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stock-based compensation recorded in the year ended September 30, 2016 was $847 thousand. Stock-based compensation recorded in the year ended September 30, 2015 was $963 thousand. There was no cash received from exercises under all stock options plans and warrants for the year ended September 30, 2016. Cash received from exercises under all stock option plans and warrants for the years ended September 30, 2015 was $41 thousand. There were no tax benefits realized for tax deductions from option exercises for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015. The Company currently expects to satisfy stock-based awards with registered shares available to be issued.

The Company also has an Employee Stock Purchase Plan (Purchase Plan) under which an aggregate of 150,000 common shares may be issued. The Shareholders approved an amendment to increase the number of shares of common stock subject to the plan from 100,000 to 150,000 at the Company’s annual meeting in March 2014. All employees who have completed 90 days of employment with the Company on the first day of each offering period and customarily work twenty hours per week or more are eligible to participate in the Purchase Plan. An employee who, after the grant of an option to purchase, would hold common stock and/or hold outstanding options to purchase stock possessing 5% or more of the total combined voting power or value of the Company will not be eligible to participate. Eligible employees may make contributions through payroll deductions of up to 10% of their compensation. No participant in the Purchase Plan is permitted to purchase common stock under the Purchase Plan if such option would permit his or her rights to purchase stock under the Purchase Plan to accrue at a rate that exceeds $25,000 of the fair market value of such shares, or that exceeds 1,000 shares, for each calendar year. The Company makes a bi-annual offering to eligible employees of options to purchase shares of common stock under the Purchase Plan on the first trading day of January and July. Each offering period is for a period of 6 months from the date of the offering, and each eligible employee as of the date of offering is entitled to purchase shares of common stock at a purchase price equal to the lower of 85% of the fair market value of common stock on the first or last trading day of the offering period. A total of 23,708 shares are available to be issued under
the plan. There were 14,708 and 14,067 shares purchased by employees during fiscal 2016 and 2015, respectively. The Company recorded stock compensation expense under this plan of $19 and $22 thousand during fiscal 2016 and 2015, respectively. Cash received from issuance of stock under this plan was $66 and $85 thousand during fiscal 2016 and 2015, respectively.

6. Income Taxes

The provision for income taxes consists of the following (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years Ended September 30,</th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current tax expense U.S.</td>
<td>$136</td>
<td>$137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current tax expense (benefit) foreign</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>(30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deferred income tax expense</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision for income taxes</td>
<td>$269</td>
<td>$107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

U.S. and foreign components of income (loss) before income taxes were as follows (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years Ended September 30,</th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>U.S.</td>
<td>$(3,504)</td>
<td>$(4,122)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign</td>
<td>456</td>
<td>(296)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Income (loss) before income taxes</td>
<td>$(3,048)</td>
<td>$(4,418)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The reconciliation of income tax expense (benefit) computed at the appropriate country specific rate to income tax expense (benefit) is as follows (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years Ended September 30,</th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Income tax expense (benefit) at statutory rate</td>
<td>$(1,036)</td>
<td>$(1,502)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State income tax expense (benefit)</td>
<td>(130)</td>
<td>(131)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign tax activity</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R&amp;D tax credit expiration</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanent differences, net</td>
<td>274</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment of temporary differences to income tax returns</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change in valuation allowance</td>
<td>1,152</td>
<td>972</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Income tax expense</td>
<td>$269</td>
<td>$107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The significant components of the deferred tax accounts recognized for financial reporting purposes are as follows (in thousands):
Deferred tax assets:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Net operating loss and other carryforwards</td>
<td>$34,563</td>
<td>$36,492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common stock options</td>
<td>1,134</td>
<td>961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unearned revenue</td>
<td>389</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>423</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total deferred tax assets</strong></td>
<td>36,509</td>
<td>37,955</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Deferred tax liabilities:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fixed assets</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>(149)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>(144)</td>
<td>(157)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total deferred tax liabilities</strong></td>
<td>(144)</td>
<td>(306)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Net deferred tax asset</strong></td>
<td>36,365</td>
<td>37,649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valuation allowance</td>
<td>(36,299)</td>
<td>(37,525)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equity gains on investment in Mediasite KK</td>
<td>(916)</td>
<td>(916)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer relationships</td>
<td>(718)</td>
<td>(716)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goodwill amortization</td>
<td>(2,930)</td>
<td>(2,690)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Net deferred tax liability for goodwill and intangible assets amortization</strong></td>
<td>$(4,498)</td>
<td>$(4,198)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Company has a $66 thousand and $124 thousand deferred tax asset at September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively, recorded within the prepaid expenses and other current assets line on the consolidated balance sheet and is primarily related to net operating losses of MSKK.

At September 30, 2016, the Company had net operating loss carryforwards of approximately $95 million for U.S. Federal and $43 million for state tax purposes. For Federal tax purposes, the carryforwards expire in varying amounts between 2019 and 2036. For state tax purposes, the carryforwards expire in varying amounts between 2016 and 2035. Utilization of the Company’s net operating loss may be subject to substantial annual limitation due to the ownership change limitations provided by the Internal Revenue Code and similar state provisions. Such an annual limitation could result in the expiration of the net operating loss carryforwards before utilization. In addition, the Company has research and development tax credit carryforwards of approximately $418 thousand, which expire in varying amounts between 2019 and 2020.

The Company maintains an additional paid-in-capital (APIC) pool which represents the excess tax benefits related to share-based compensation that are available to absorb future tax deficiencies. If the amount of future tax deficiencies is greater than the available APIC pool, the Company records the excess as income tax expense in its consolidated statements of income. For fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, the Company had a sufficient APIC pool to cover any tax deficiencies recorded and as a result, these deficiencies did not affect its results of operations. At September 30, 2016, the Company has $1.1 million of net operating loss carry forwards for which a benefit would be recorded in APIC when realized.

Earnings of the Company’s foreign subsidiaries are generally subject to U.S. taxation upon repatriation to the U.S. and the Company’s tax provision reflects the related incremental U.S. tax except for certain foreign subsidiaries whose unremitted earnings are considered to be indefinitely reinvested. No deferred tax liability has been recognized with regard to the remittance of such earnings after MSKK and Sonic Foundry International BV acquisitions were completed. Because of the availability of U.S. foreign tax credits, it is likely no U.S. tax would be due if such earnings were repatriated. At September 30, 2016, unremitted earnings of $1.4 million for foreign subsidiaries were deemed to be indefinitely reinvested.
Beginning with an acquisition in fiscal year 2002, the Company has amortized Goodwill for tax purposes over a 15 year life. Tax amortization is not applicable to the goodwill from the foreign acquisitions that took place during fiscal 2014 since the foreign goodwill is non-deductible for US federal tax purposes.

The difference between the book and tax balance of certain of the company’s goodwill creates a deferred tax liability and an annual tax expense. Because of the long term nature of the goodwill timing difference, tax planning strategies cannot be utilized with respect to the deferred tax liability. The Company’s tax rate differs from the expected tax rate each reporting period as a result of the aforementioned items. The balance of the Deferred Tax Liability was $4.6 million at September 30, 2016 and $4.3 million at September 30, 2015, respectively. The Company recorded a deferred tax liability related to the Customer Relationship intangibles value acquired as part of the purchase of Sonic Foundry International BV and Mediasite KK. The Company also recorded tax expense related to the “step-up” gain on its original equity investment in Mediasite KK. The Company has some other temporary differences related to its Mediasite KK subsidiary.

In accordance with accounting guidance for uncertainty in income taxes, the Company has concluded that a reserve for income tax contingencies is not necessary. The Company’s practice is to recognize interest and/or penalties related to income tax matters in income tax expense. The Company had no accruals for interest and penalties on the Company’s Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets at September 30, 2016 or September 30, 2015 and has not recognized any interest or penalties in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations for either of the twelve month periods ended September 30, 2016 or 2015.

The Company is subject to taxation in the U.S., Netherlands, Japan and various state jurisdictions. All of the Company’s tax years are subject to examination by the U.S., Dutch, Japanese and state tax authorities due to the carryforward of unutilized net operating losses.

7. Savings Plan

The Company’s defined contribution 401(k) savings plan covers substantially all employees meeting certain minimum eligibility requirements. Participating employees can elect to defer a portion of their compensation and contribute it to the plan on a pretax basis. The Company may also match certain amounts and/or provide additional discretionary contributions, as defined. The Company made matching contributions of $426 thousand and $402 thousand during the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively. The Company made no additional discretionary contributions during 2016 and 2015.

8. Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets

Goodwill and intangible assets that have indefinite useful lives are recorded at cost and are not amortized but, instead, tested at least annually for impairment. The Company assesses the impairment of goodwill on an annual basis or whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the fair value of these assets is less than the carrying value.

The Company performs annual goodwill impairment test as of July 1, and tested goodwill recognized in connection with the acquisitions of Mediasite, Sonic Foundry International and Mediasite KK and determined it was not impaired. For purposes of the test, goodwill on the Company’s books is evaluated within three separate reporting units.

The changes in the carrying amount of goodwill for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively, are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>September 30, 2014</th>
<th>September 30, 2015</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Balance as of September 30, 2014</td>
<td>$ 11,185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign currency translation adjustment</td>
<td>(332)</td>
<td>10,853</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance as of September 30, 2015</td>
<td></td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign currency translation adjustment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance as of September 30, 2016</td>
<td>$ 11,310</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following tables present details of the Company’s total intangible assets at September 30, 2016 and 2015:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(in thousands)</th>
<th>Life (years)</th>
<th>Gross</th>
<th>Accumulated Amortization at September 30, 2016</th>
<th>Balance at September 30, 2016</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amortizable:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loan origination fees</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>$312</td>
<td>$236</td>
<td>$76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer relationships</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2,605</td>
<td>723</td>
<td>1,882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software development costs</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>533</td>
<td>533</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product rights</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>672</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Amortizable</td>
<td></td>
<td>4,122</td>
<td>1,779</td>
<td>2,343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-amortizable goodwill</td>
<td></td>
<td>11,310</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>11,310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>$15,432</td>
<td>$1,779</td>
<td>$13,653</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Estimated amortization expense for each of the five subsequent fiscal years is expected to be (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fiscal Year (in thousands)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>$449</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>406</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>362</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2020</td>
<td>302</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2021</td>
<td>273</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Thereafter
| | 551 | | |
| Total                     | $2,343 | | |
9. Related-Party Transactions

The Company incurred fees of $126 thousand and $122 thousand during the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively, to a law firm whose partner is a director and stockholder of the Company. The Company had accrued liabilities for unbilled services to the same law firm of $45 and $25 thousand at September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

As of September 30, 2016 and 2015, the Company had a loan outstanding to an executive totaling $26 thousand. The loan is collateralized by Company stock.

On December 22, 2014, the company issued 74,802 warrants to two individuals in combination with the sale of a like number of shares of common stock, one of which is the Chairman of the Company’s Board of Directors. These warrants were immediately exercisable, expire 5 years after the date of issuance and have an exercise price of $14.00.

As of September 30, 2016, the Company had no outstanding balance related to management fees and dividends payable to the sellers of and current employees of its wholly-owned subsidiary, Sonic Foundry International B.V. The outstanding balance was $114 thousand at September 30, 2015.

10. Segment Information

We have determined that in accordance with the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) 280-10, Segment Reporting, we operate in three operating segments, however these segments meet the criteria for aggregation for reporting purposes as one reporting segment as of September 30, 2016.

The following summarizes revenue by geographic region (in thousands):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Geographic Region</th>
<th>Years Ended September 30,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>$22,686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe and Middle East</td>
<td>4,843</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>8,760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>1,686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>$37,975</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. Customer Concentration

In the fiscal year ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, two distributors represented 27% and 22% of total revenue, respectively. At September 30, 2016 and 2015, these two distributors represented 28% and 22% of total accounts receivable, respectively.

12. Legal Proceedings

From time to time, the Company is subject to legal proceedings or claims arising from its normal course of operations. The Company accrues for costs related to loss contingencies when such costs are probable and reasonably estimable. As of September 30, 2016, the Company is not aware of any material pending legal proceedings or threatened litigation that would have a material adverse effect on the Company’s financial condition or results of operations.

13. Quarterly Financial Data (unaudited)

The following table sets forth selected quarterly financial information for the years ended September 30, 2016 and 2015. The operating results are not necessarily indicative of results for any future period.
Quarterly Financial Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Q4-'16</th>
<th>Q3-'16</th>
<th>Q2-'16</th>
<th>Q1-'16</th>
<th>Q4-'15</th>
<th>Q3-'15</th>
<th>Q2-'15</th>
<th>Q1-'15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Revenue</td>
<td>$9,455</td>
<td>$9,817</td>
<td>$9,612</td>
<td>$9,091</td>
<td>$9,056</td>
<td>$10,556</td>
<td>$8,106</td>
<td>$8,741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross margin</td>
<td>7,102</td>
<td>7,235</td>
<td>7,273</td>
<td>6,380</td>
<td>6,450</td>
<td>7,088</td>
<td>6,216</td>
<td>6,070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Income (loss) from</td>
<td>(493)</td>
<td>(452)</td>
<td>(214)</td>
<td>(1,117)</td>
<td>(908)</td>
<td>(885)</td>
<td>(1,072)</td>
<td>(1,227)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net income (loss)</td>
<td>(847)</td>
<td>(552)</td>
<td>(711)</td>
<td>(1,207)</td>
<td>(1,222)</td>
<td>(921)</td>
<td>(1,350)</td>
<td>(1,032)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic and diluted net</td>
<td>$ (0.19)</td>
<td>$ (0.13)</td>
<td>$ (0.16)</td>
<td>$ (0.28)</td>
<td>$ (0.28)</td>
<td>$ (0.21)</td>
<td>$ (0.31)</td>
<td>$ (0.24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>income (loss) per share</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. Subsequent Events

On December 9, 2016, the Companies entered into an Eighth Amendment to the Second Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement (the "Eighth Amendment") with Silicon Valley Bank. The Eighth Amendment: (i) extends the revolving line of credit maturity date to January 31, 2019, (ii) increases maximum subsidiary indebtedness allowable to $1,000,000 outstanding at any one time and (iii) provides for a "streamline period", during which bank reporting is due monthly when a streamline period is in effect and weekly when a streamline period is not in effect.

ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

Not applicable.

ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Based on evaluations at September 30, 2016, our principal executive officer and principal financial officer, with the participation of our management team, have evaluated the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15 (e) and 15d-15 (e) under the Securities Exchange Act) and determined that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective. Disclosure controls and procedures ensure that information required to be disclosed by us in reports that we file or submit under the Securities Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the rules and forms of the SEC, and that material information relating to the Company is accumulated and communicated to management, including our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosures.

Limitations on the effectiveness of Controls and Permitted Omission from Management’s Assessment

Our internal control over financial reporting is designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. All internal control systems, no matter how well designed, have inherent limitations, including the possibility of human error and the circumvention or overriding of controls. Accordingly, even effective internal controls can only provide reasonable assurance with respect to financial statement preparation. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.
Management’s Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, as such term is defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f).

Under the supervision and with the participation of our management, including our principal executive officer and principal financial officer, we conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting based on the framework in the 2013 Internal Control-Integrated Framework, issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (the “2013 COSO Framework”) on May 14, 2013. The 2013 COSO Framework outlines the 17 underlying principles and the following fundamental components of a company’s internal control: (i) control environment, (ii) risk assessment, (iii) control activities, (iv) information and communication, and (v) monitoring. The 2013 Framework was adopted in the fiscal year ended September 30, 2015.

Based on evaluations at September 30, 2016, our principal executive officer and principal financial officer, with the participation of our management team, have evaluated the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15 (e) and 15d-15 (e) under the Securities Exchange Act) and determined that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective. Disclosure controls and procedures ensure that information required to be disclosed by us in reports that we file or submit under the Securities Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the rules and forms of the SEC, and that material information relating to the Company is accumulated and communicated to management, including our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosures. Based on this evaluation, our principal executive officer and principal financial officer concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of September 30, 2016.

Changes in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

We have not made any change to our internal control over financial reporting that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

None.
PART III

ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS, AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

The information required by Item 10 of Form 10-K with respect to directors and executive officers is incorporated herein by reference to the information contained in the section entitled “Proposal One: Election of Directors” and “Executive Officers of Sonic”, respectively, in the Company’s definitive Proxy Statement to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission in connection with the solicitation of proxies for the Company’s 2016 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, which will be filed no later than January 28, 2017 (the “Proxy Statement”).

Item 405 of Regulation S-K calls for disclosure of any known late filings or failure by an insider to file a report required by Section 16(a) of the Securities Act. This information is contained in the Section entitled “Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance” in the Proxy Statement and is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 401 of Regulation S-K calls for disclosure of whether or not the Company has a financial expert serving on the audit committee of its Board of Directors, and if so who that individual is. This information is contained in the Section entitled “Meetings and Committees of Directors” in the Proxy Statement and is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 407 of Regulation S-K calls for disclosure of whether or not the Company has an audit committee and a financial expert serving on the audit committee of the Board of Directors, and if so, who that individual is. Item 407 also requires disclosure regarding the Company’s nominating committee and the director nomination process. This information is contained in the section entitled “Meetings and Committees of Directors” in the Proxy Statement and is incorporated herein by reference.

Sonic Foundry has adopted a code of ethics that applies to all officers and employees, including Sonic Foundry’s principal executive officer, its principal financial officer, and persons performing similar functions. This code of ethics is available, without charge, to any investor who requests it. Requests should be addressed in writing to Mr. Kenneth A. Minor, Corporate Secretary, 222 West Washington Avenue, Madison, Wisconsin 53703.

ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

The information required by Item 11 of Form 10-K is incorporated herein by reference to the information contained in the sections entitled “Directors Compensation”, “Executive Compensation and Related Information” and “Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation” in the Proxy Statement.

ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

The information required by Item 12 of Form 10-K is incorporated herein by reference to the information contained in the sections entitled “Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management” in the Proxy Statement. Information related to equity compensation plans is set forth in Item 5 herein.
ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

The information required by Item 13 of Form 10-K is incorporated herein by reference to the information contained in the section entitled “Certain Transactions” and “Meetings and Committees of Directors” in the Proxy Statement.

ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES

The information required by Item 14 of Form 10-K is incorporated herein by reference to the information contained in the section entitled “Ratification of Appointment of Independent Auditors – Fiscal 2015 and 2016 Audit Fee Summary” in the Proxy Statement.